



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

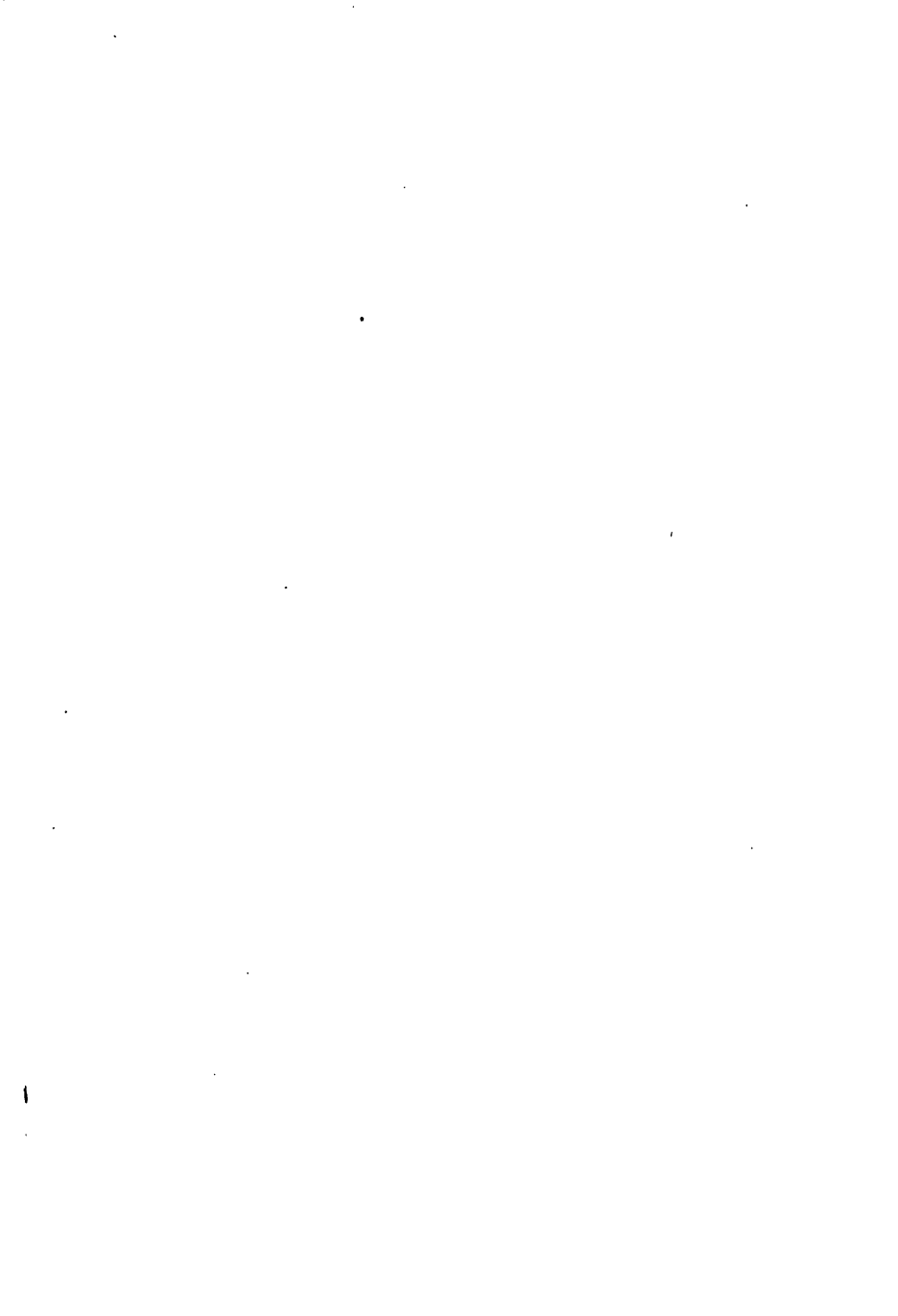
About Google Book Search

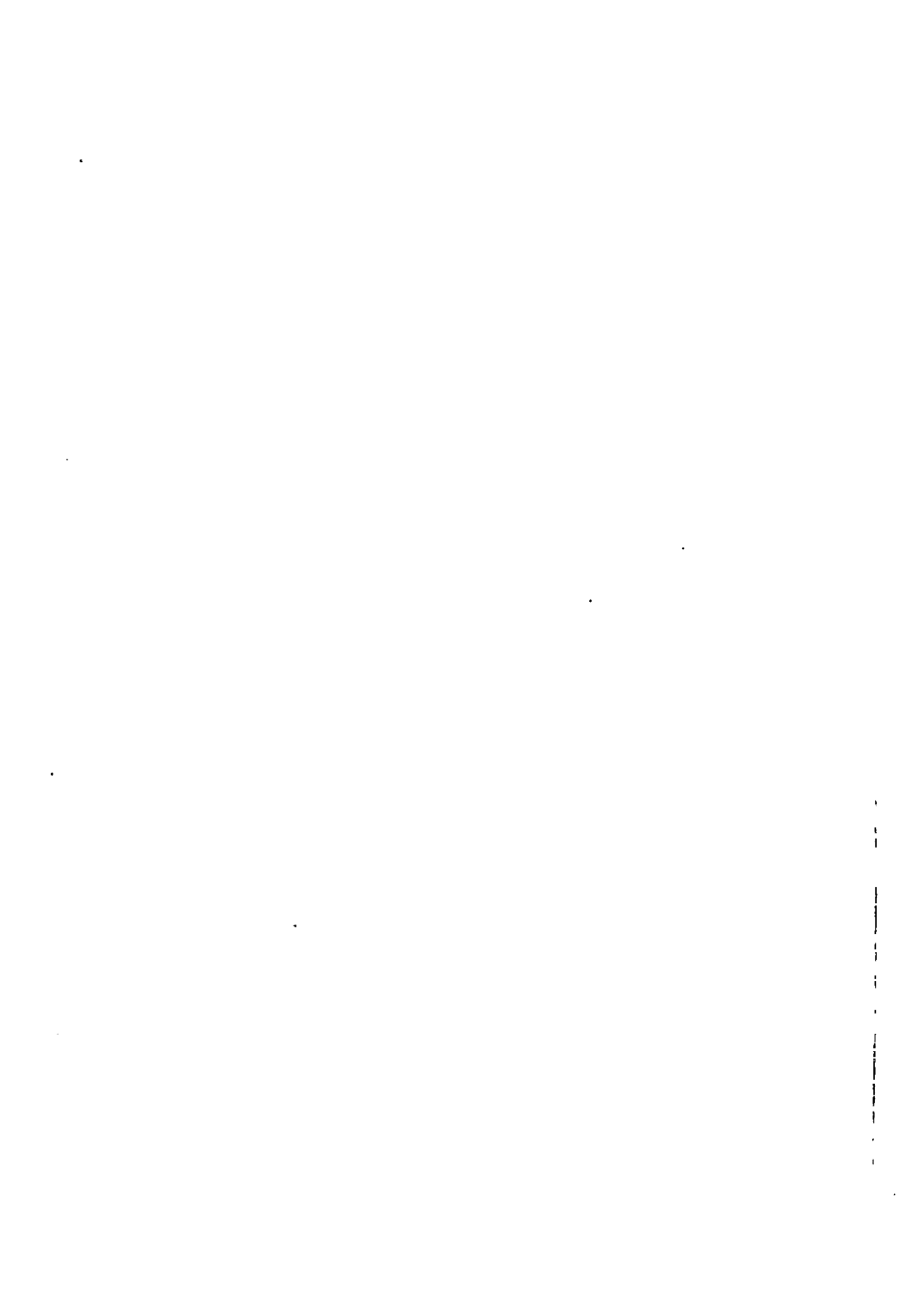
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

GIFT

GIFT OF
Mrs. F. M. Foster







Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

Essentials of Latin for Beginners. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.

A School Latin Grammar. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.

A First Latin Writer. M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.

Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.

Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. \$1.25.

Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University. \$1.25.

Six Orations. \$1.00.

Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.

Cicero. Cato Maior. Frank G. Moore, Columbia University. 80 cents.

Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia. Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.

Selections from Livy. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.

Horace. Odes and Epodes. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.

Horace. Satires. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. \$1.00.

Horace. Satires and Epistles. Edward P. Morris, Yale University. \$1.25.

Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare. Moore. **Satires and Epistles.** Morris. In one volume. \$2.00.

Pliny's Letters. Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.

Tibullus. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.

Lucretius. William A. Merrill, University of California. \$2.25.

Latin Literature of the Empire. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.

Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius \$1.80

Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus \$1.80

Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. \$1.25.

Others to be announced later.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD
HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK

REVISED



NEW YORK ··· CINCINNATI ··· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Add to lib.

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

COPYRIGHT, 1911, 1912, BY
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.

W. P. 20

from
Foster

PA2087
P43
1912

PREFACE

THIS book is designed primarily to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallie War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin :

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallie War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.

2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.

4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.

5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are stories for rapid reading, based on the vocabulary and constructions already studied, and selections from *Viri Romae* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, in simplified form. This material should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms: Mr. H. F. Towle, Curtis High School, New York City; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY, January, 1905.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE present revision embodies some of the suggestions received from time to time from teachers who have used the Essentials. It has been undertaken, not to change the character or plan of the work, but solely to introduce such simplifications and amplifications as will make it still more helpful to the beginner. The statement of rules has in a number of instances been modified; a different arrangement has been given to the conjugations in the appendix; the introduction has been made somewhat fuller; and the order of Lessons 38 and 39 has been changed. In other respects the changes are internal and do not affect the method or scope of the work.

All the changes made in this edition have been scrutinized and approved by Professor Charles Knapp of Columbia University, to whose keen scholarship and valuable aid the author is deeply indebted.

June, 1911.

H. C. P

CONTENTS

| LESSON | PAGE |
|---|------|
| INTRODUCTION | 11 |
| 1. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> . Feminine Nouns | 16 |
| 2. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Feminine Adjectives | 18 |
| 3. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i> | 20 |
| 4. First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object | 22 |
| 5. Second Declension or Stems in <i>-o-</i> . Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i> . Mas- culine of Adjectives | 25 |
| 6. Second Declension (continued). Neuters in <i>-um</i> . Appositive. In- direct Object | 28 |
| 7. Declension of Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i> . Agreement | 30 |
| 8. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> | 33 |
| 9. Second Declension (continued). Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Ad- jectives in <i>-er, -(e)ra, -(e)rum</i> | 36 |
| 10. Imperfect and Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . Order of Words. Review | 40 |
| 11. First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active | 42 |
| 12. First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means | 45 |
| 13. First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review | 48 |
| 14. Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active | 51 |
| 15. Third Declension. Consonant Stems | 54 |
| 16. Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause | 57 |
| 17. Third Declension (continued). Stems in <i>-i-</i> | 60 |
| 18. Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When | 63 |
| 19. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation | 65 |
| 20. Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent | 68 |

| LESSON | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 21. Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner | 72 |
| 22. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations | 75 |
| 23. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Ablative of Specification | 78 |
| 24. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives | 81 |
| 25. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II | 84 |
| 26. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <i>Sum</i> . Review of the First and Second Conjugations | 85 |
| 27. Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive | 87 |
| 28. Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in <i>iō</i> | 89 |
| 29. Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English | 92 |
| 30. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III | 94 |
| 31. <i>Is, Idem</i> | 95 |
| 32. The Relative Pronoun | 98 |
| 33. <i>Hic</i> and <i>Ille</i> . Adjectives used as Substantives | 101 |
| 34. <i>Ipse, Iste</i> . Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation | 104 |
| 35. Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i> | 107 |
| 36. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV | 110 |
| 37. Fourth Declension | 111 |
| 38. Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possession | 114 |
| 39. Irregular Verb <i>Eō</i> . Place Where, Whence, Whither | 116 |
| 40. Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space | 120 |
| 41. Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive | 122 |
| 42. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V | 125 |
| 43. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison | 125 |
| 44. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference | 128 |
| 45. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. <i>Possum</i> | 131 |
| 46. Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs | 134 |
| 47. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI | 137 |
| 48. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns | 137 |
| 49. Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service | 141 |
| 50. Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive | 144 |
| 51. Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings | 147 |
| 52. Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute | 151 |

CONTENTS

9

| LESSON | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII | 154 |
| 54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings | 155 |
| 55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements | 157 |
| 56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with <i>Ūtor, Fruor</i> , etc. | 161 |
| 57. <i>Ferō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . Dative with Intransitives | 163 |
| 58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII | 165 |
| 59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose | 166 |
| 60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense. Result Clauses | 169 |
| 61. <i>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</i> . Relative Clause of Purpose | 172 |
| 62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses | 174 |
| 63. Substantive Clauses | 178 |
| 64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX | 181 |
| 65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. <i>Cum</i> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive | 182 |
| 66. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . Dative with Compound Verbs | 185 |
| 67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations | 187 |
| 68. Gerund and Gerundive | 190 |
| 69. Complete Review of Verb Forms | 193 |
| 70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X | 194 |

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

| | |
|--|-----|
| 71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time | 196 |
| 72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time | 198 |
| 73. Wishes | 200 |
| 74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences | 202 |
| 75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose | 204 |
| 76. Periphrastic Conjugations | 206 |
| SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING | 209 |
| SELECTIONS FOR READING : | |
| Selections from Roman History | 227 |
| Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters 1-20 | 236 |
| APPENDIX. Tables of Declension, Conjugation, etc., Summary of Rules of Syntax | 248 |
| LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY | 289 |
| ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY | 321 |
| INDEX | 337 |



(10)

ITALY AND GAUL

SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat them after the teacher. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

ALPHABET

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable, as in *iūnior*.

3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*. The other letters are consonants.

4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one sound. They are

ae oe au eu ui

PRONUNCIATION

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows:

ā like *a* in *father*.

ī like *i* in *machine*.

ē like *e* in *prey*.

ō like *o* in *note*.

ū like *oo* in *root*.

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows:

a like the first *a* in *ahd*.

i like *i* in *pit*.

e like *e* in *step*.

o like *o* in *or*.

u like *u* in *pull*.

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

| | |
|--|--|
| c and g are always hard, as in <i>come</i> and <i>go</i> . | s is a hissing sound, as in <i>sin</i> ; never like <i>z</i> as in <i>ease</i> . |
| i consonant is like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> . | ch is like <i>ch</i> in <i>chorus</i> . |
| t is always hard, as in <i>tin</i> . | ph is like <i>ph</i> in <i>alphabet</i> . |
| v is like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> . | qu is almost like <i>kw</i> . |

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> . | au like <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> . |
| oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>toil</i> . | eu (rare) like <i>éh-oo</i> . |
| ui is almost like <i>we</i> . | ei (rare) like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> . |

9. Pronounce carefully the following words:

| | | | | | | |
|-----|------|------|-------|--------|--------|-------|
| hī | iam | tot | mē | genus | -que | cui |
| ad | vis | sic | quia | coepit | vir | aeger |
| ita | quis | haec | causa | rēgnō | mēnsae | |

SYLLABLES

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong alone or with one or more consonants, preceding or following. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: *ae-dī-fi-cō*, *I build*.

11. Except in compound words (see 13), a single consonant between vowels or diphthongs should be joined with the second vowel: *a-mf-cus*, *friend*, *dī-xit*, *he said*.

12. If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is before the last consonant, except that *l* or *r* with the consonant immediately preceding is joined to the second vowel: *hōs-pes*, *guest*, *dīc-tus*, *said*, *sānc-tus*, *holy*, *cās-tra*, *camp*, *dē-mōns-trō*, *I point out*, *cōg-nōs-cō*, *I recognize*, *pū-bli-cus*, *public*.

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: *ād-est* (*ad*, *near*; *est*, *he is*), *he is present*.

14. Doubled consonants are separated : *pu-él-la*, *girl*.

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

16. Vowels are long (—) or short (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels :

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h* : *có-pi-a*, *abundance*.
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long : *có-gō* (*cōāgō*), *I collect*.
3. Vowels are long before *nf*, *ns*, *nct*, *ncs* : *inferō*, *I bring in*; *insānus*, *mad*.
4. Diphthongs are long : *cāusa*, *cause*.

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature : *lē-gēs*, *laws*; *ae-dēs*, *temple*.

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by *x* or *z*, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short : *vocant*, *they call*; *dux*, *leader*.

ACCENT

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice (accent):

1. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult : *témplum*, *temple*.

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, by nature or position, otherwise the antepenult: *amāre, to love; mittere, to send.*
4. Certain words like *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que, and*, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that they are pronounced with it; the last syllable of the first word has an accent: *amátne, does he love? hóminésque, and the men.*

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

| | | | |
|---------|-----------|------------|------------|
| inīquus | vincam | aedificium | gladiō |
| grātiaē | fīlius | coepērunt | cuius |
| huic | īdem | filiusque | quae |
| monēre | vērō | mēnsārum | faciēbam |
| facere | aegritūdō | pugnābō | laudābimus |

INFLECTION

22. **Parts of Speech.**—These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.**—This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

24. **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases, which are shown by means of case endings:

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive*. It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of*.

3. *Dative*. This corresponds sometimes to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.¹
6. *Ablative*. This expresses various adverbial relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are best distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

25. Stem and Base. — The stem is the form which gives in a general way the meaning of the word. The final letter of the stem, called the stem characteristic, often disappears or is changed before case endings. It is always found in the genitive plural, except that *o* of *-o*-stems is lengthened. The base (that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the case endings are added directly) is formed by dropping the stem characteristic or by omitting the ending of the genitive singular.

26. Conjugation. — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

¹ Except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, the vocative case is like the nominative. It is therefore not given in the paradigms except in the second declension.

GENDER

27. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

In names of persons only, the gender is based, as in English, on sex (Natural Gender). In all other classes of words the gender is determined by the signification of the noun or by the ending of the nominative (Grammatical Gender).

28. General Rules of Gender.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *nauta, sailor*; *Tiberis, the Tiber*; *Caesar, Caesar*; *aquilō, north wind*; *Iānuārius, January*.
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: *filia, daughter*; *Italia, Italy*; *Athēnae, Athens*; *pirus, pear tree*.
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil, nothing*.

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

FEMININE AND MASCULINE NOUNS

29. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

Stem¹ *stellā*. Base¹ *stell-*.

| | SINGULAR | CASE ENDINGS |
|------|---|--------------|
| NOM. | <i>stella, a star</i> (as subject) ² | -a |
| GEN. | <i>stellae, of a star, or star's</i> | -ae |
| DAT. | <i>stellae, to or for a star</i> | -ae |
| ACC. | <i>stellam, star, or a star</i> (as object) | -am |
| ABL. | <i>stellā, from, with, by a star</i> | -ā |

¹ See 25. ² There is no article in Latin. Consequently *stella* may mean *star, the star, or a star*.

| | PLURAL | CASE ENDINGS |
|------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| NOM. | stellae, <i>stars</i> (as subject) | -ae |
| GEN. | stellārum, <i>of stars, or stars'</i> | -ārum |
| DAT. | stellis, <i>to or for stars</i> | -is |
| ACC. | stellās, <i>stars</i> (as object) | -ās |
| ABL. | stellis, <i>from, with, by stars</i> | -is |

Note carefully

1. That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
2. That the dative and ablative plural are alike.
3. That the -a of the ablative singular is long.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like **stella** :

NOUNS

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| puella, ae, f., <i>girl</i> . | rosa, ae, f., <i>rose</i> . |
| rēgina, ae, f., <i>queen</i> . | via, ae, f., <i>road, way, street</i> . |
| stella, ae, f., <i>star</i> . | silva, ae, f., <i>forest</i> . |
| porta, ae, f., <i>gate</i> . | lūna, ae, f., <i>moon</i> . |

31.

EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

- I. 1. Puellārum. 2. Portis. 3. Viā. 4. Rosīs.
 5. Silvam. 6. Stellis. 7. Rēginae. 8. Viīs. 9. Portae.
 10. Stellās. 11. Viārum. 12. Rosa rēginae. 13. Viās
 silvārum.

- II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests.
 4. The rose of the queen. 5. By the streets. 6. Of
 the stars. 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the
 girls.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rosa pulchra, *pretty rose*

Stem **rosā- pulchrā-**

Base **ros- pulchr-**

SINGULAR

| | |
|------|---|
| NOM. | rosa pulchra , <i>a pretty rose</i> |
| GEN. | rosae pulchrae , <i>of a pretty rose</i> |
| DAT. | rosae pulchrae , <i>to or for a pretty rose</i> |
| ACC. | rosam pulchram , <i>a pretty rose</i> |
| ABL. | rosā pulchrā , <i>from, with, by a pretty rose</i> |

PLURAL

| | |
|------|--|
| NOM. | rosae pulchrae , <i>pretty roses</i> |
| GEN. | rosārum pulchrārum , <i>of pretty roses</i> |
| DAT. | rosis pulchris , <i>to or for pretty roses</i> |
| ACC. | rosās pulchrās , <i>pretty roses</i> |
| ABL. | rosis pulchris , <i>from, with, by pretty roses</i> |

Observe that the adjective and the noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together : *via lāta, the wide road ; puella parva, the little girl.*

33. Examine the following :

1. *Rosa pulchra est, the rose is pretty.*
2. *Rosae pulchrae sunt, the roses are pretty.*

Note in these sentences

- a. That the subjects *rosa* and *rosae* are in the nominative case.
- b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular, and plural, when the subject is plural.
- c. That the predicate adjectives *pulchra* and *pulchrae* agree with the subject in number, gender, and case.

34. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Subject.** — *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*

2. **Predicate Agreement.** — *A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case.*

35.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

fābula, ae, f., story.
sagitta, ae, f., arrow.
insula, ae, f., island.
terra, ae, f., land, country.

ADJECTIVES

bona, good.
lāta, broad, wide.
longa, long.
magna, large, great.
pulchra, beautiful, pretty.

VERBS

est, (he, she, it) is, there is.
sunt, (they) are, there are.

ADVERBS

ubi, where, when.
nōn, not.

CONJUNCTION

et, and.

36.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābulae longae sunt. 2. Terra est lāta et pulchra.
 3. Ubi est pulchra īnsula? 4. Lūna est pulchra. 5. Bonae sagittae sunt longae. 6. Nōn est pulchra. 7. Magnae sunt insulae. 8. Lātis terrīs. 9. Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae. 10. Via est lāta. 11. Ubi sunt insulae magnae? 12. Sagittārum longārum.

II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It¹ is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. It is a good story.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**

37. Examine the following :

1. Rosa puellae alba est, *the rose of the girl is white, or the girl's rose is white.*
2. Rosae puellārum albae sunt, *the roses of the girls are white, or the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rosa** : not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rosae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. RULE. — **The Genitive.** — *The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB **sum**

| | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|----------|--|--|
| 1ST PER. | sum , <i>I am</i> | sumus , <i>we are</i> |
| 2D PER. | es , <i>you are (thou art)</i> | estis , <i>you are</i> |
| 3D PER. | est , <i>(he, she, it) is, there is</i> | sunt , <i>they are, there are</i> |

¹ It is, est.

40. Examine the following :

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, the woman is beautiful.

QUESTIONS

1. **Estne fēmina pulchra ? is the woman beautiful ?** (Answer expected, Yes or No.)
2. **Nōnne fēmina pulchra est ? is not the woman beautiful ?** (Answer expected, Yes.)
3. **Ubi est fēmina ? where is the woman ?**

Observe

1. That in simple questions that may be answered by either yes or no, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word, which usually stands first.
2. That questions expecting the answer yes, are introduced by **nōnne**.
3. That **-ne** is not used if the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb (**qui, who, ubi, where, cūr, why, etc.**).

41.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., money.
vita, ae, f., life.
cōpia, ae, f., abundance (pl., troops, forces).
fēmina, ae, f., woman.
patria, ae, f., native land, country.
Graecia, ae, f., Greece.
Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe.
Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.
filia,¹ ae, f., daughter.

ADJECTIVES

nova, new.
parva, small.
mea, my, mine.
tua, your, yours (referring to one person only).

ADVERB

semper, always, ever.

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

¹ **Filia, daughter, and dea, goddess, have the ending -ābus, not -is, in the dative and ablative plural: filiābus, deābus.**

42.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōne sunt parvae filiae? 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vīta fēminae. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiae rēginae nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgina tuae patriae pulchra est. 10. Cōpiae patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae. 11. Rēginārum rosae sunt pulchrae. 12. Semperne novae lūnae pulchrae sunt? 13. Ubi sunt rēginārum cōpiae? 14. Fēminae Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. Is it not a pretty country?

(READING SELECTION 441)

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT OBJECT

43.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *amō*

| | SINGULAR | PERSONAL ENDINGS ¹ |
|----------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1ST PER. | <i>amō, I love, am loving, do love</i> | <i>-ō (or -m), I</i> |
| 2D PER. | <i>amās, you love, are loving, do love</i> | <i>-s, you (or thou)</i> |
| 3D PER. | <i>amat, he loves, is loving, does love</i> | <i>-t, he, she, it</i> |

| | PLURAL | PERSONAL ENDINGS |
|----------|--|------------------|
| 1ST PER. | <i>amāmus, we love, are loving, do love</i> | <i>-mus, we</i> |
| 2D PER. | <i>amātis, you love, are loving, do love</i> | <i>-tis, you</i> |
| 3D PER. | <i>amant, they love, are loving, do love</i> | <i>-nt, they</i> |

¹ These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.

Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem **amā-**, the final vowel of which is lost before **-ō** in the first person singular, and is shortened before **-t, -nt**.
2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated clearly by the *ending*, without the use of a pronoun.

44. Like **amō**, conjugate the present indicative of

pugnō, *I fight*

culpō, *I blame*

vocō, *I call*

laudō, *I praise*

45. Carefully examine the following :

1. **Rēgina nautam laudat**, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. **Rēginae nautam laudant**, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. **Nautam laudant**, *they praise the sailor.*
4. **Nautam laudāmus**, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That, when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That, when a noun is not the subject, the subject need not be expressed by a separate word. In English, however, we must use a pronoun.
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Agreement of Verb.** — *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

2. **Direct Object.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47.

VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m.,¹ *farmer*.nauta, ae, m.,¹ *sailor*.Italia, ae, f., *Italy*.Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.inopia, ae, f., *lack, want*.fida, *faithful*.superba, *proud, haughty*.amō, *I love, I like*.pugnō, *I fight*.vocō, *I call*.culpō, *I blame*.laudō, *I praise*.cūr, adv., *why?*in, prep. with abl., *in, on*.²

48.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Graeciae insulae sunt parvae. 2. Pecūniā meā.
3. Suntne cōpiae patriae tuae magnae? 4. Fēminae filiae
nōn semper bonae sunt. 5. Est cōpia pecūniae. 6. Pul-
chrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. Estne fābula nova?

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's
daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen,
where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus. 2. Vocās; vo-
cantne? vocātisne? 3. Cūr agricolās culpāmus? 4. In
Italiā inopia est pecūniā. 5. Laudantne nautās?
6. Superbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. Rēginae nautās
nōn laudāmus. 8. Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae.
9. Ubi sunt agricolārū filiae? 10. Cūr nautam cul-
pat? 11. Rosae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā.
12. Agricolaе inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.

¹ A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 28, 1.

² In is used with the ablative only when the verb expresses no idea of motion toward a place. Sunt in Eurōpā, *they are in Europe*. Pugnāt in silvis, *they are fighting in the forest*.

2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There¹ are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor? 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50. dominus, m., *master, lord*

Stem **domino-**²

Base **domin-**

| | SINGULAR | CASE ENDINGS |
|-------------------|--|--------------|
| NOM. | dominus, <i>master</i> | -us |
| GEN. | dominī, <i>of the master</i> | -ī |
| DAT. | dominō, <i>to or for the master</i> | -ō |
| ACC. | dominum, <i>master</i> | -um |
| VOC. ³ | domine, (<i>O</i>) <i>master</i> | -e |
| ABL. | dominō, <i>from, with, by the master</i> | -ō |
| | PLURAL | |
| NOM. | dominī, <i>masters</i> | -ī |
| GEN. | dominōrum, <i>of the masters</i> | -ōrum |
| DAT. | dominīs, <i>to or for the masters</i> | -īs |
| ACC. | dominōs, <i>masters</i> | -ōs |
| VOC. | dominī, (<i>O</i>) <i>masters</i> | -ī |
| ABL. | dominīs, <i>from, with, by the masters</i> | -īs |

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in -us is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in -us.

¹ *There are, sunt*; also *it is, est*. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way.

² See 25.

³ See 24, 5, footnote.

dominus bonus, good master

SINGULAR

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| NOM. dominus bonus | <i>good master</i> |
| GEN. domini boni | <i>of the good master</i> |
| DAT. domino bono | <i>to or for the good master</i> |
| ACC. dominum bonum | <i>good master</i> |
| VOC. domine bone | <i>(O) good master</i> |
| ABL. domino bono | <i>from, with, by the good master</i> |

PLURAL

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| NOM. domini boni | <i>good masters</i> |
| GEN. dominorum bonorum | <i>of the good masters</i> |
| DAT. dominis bonis | <i>to or for the good masters</i> |
| ACC. dominos bonos | <i>good masters</i> |
| VOC. domini boni | <i>(O) good masters</i> |
| ABL. dominis bonis | <i>from, with, by the good masters</i> |

52. 1. What case endings of this declension are alike? Which are the same as the first declension endings?

2. The base is obtained by dropping the -i of the genitive singular: genitive, **domini**, base **domin-**.

3. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| amicus , i, m., <i>friend.</i> | bonus , <i>good.</i> |
| cibus , i, m., <i>food.</i> | malus , <i>bad, evil.</i> |
| dominus , i, m., <i>master, lord.</i> | parvus , <i>small.</i> |
| equus , i, m., <i>horse.</i> | superbus , <i>proud, haughty.</i> |
| hortus , i, m., <i>garden.</i> | fidus , <i>faithful.</i> |
| servus , i, m., <i>slave.</i> | dēlectō , <i>I delight, I please.</i> |
| sed , conj., <i>but.</i> | servō , <i>I keep, I preserve, I save.</i> |
| magnus , <i>great, large.</i> | |

54.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam?
3. Ubi nautae pugnāt? 4. Nautae in viā pugnāt.
5. Filiam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper
laudant.

II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country?
2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is
the sailor's money?

55.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominō; amīcōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; domini
superbī; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae.
4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fidum servum
laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae
filia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibus dominō servant.
9. Culpāsne, amīce,¹ dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae
parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr
fidī equī dominōs dēlectant?

II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves.
2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is
in the garden. 4. He blames his² faithful horse. 5. The
garden is large, but not good. 6. Good food pleases
the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

¹ The vocative in Latin seldom comes first in the sentence.

² Omit. The possessives in Latin are frequently omitted, when they are
not emphatic or are not needed for the sake of clearness.

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN -um.
 APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. *dōnum, gift**dōnum grātum, acceptable gift*Stem *dōno-*Stem *dōno- grāto-*Base *dōn-*Base *dōn- grāt-*

SINGULAR

SINGULAR

NOM. *dōnum, gift*NOM. *dōnum grātum*GEN. *dōnī, of the gift*GEN. *dōnī grātī*DAT. *dōnō, to or for the gift*DAT. *dōnō grātō*ACC. *dōnum, gift* [*gift*]ACC. *dōnum grātum*ABL. *dōnō, from, with, by the*ABL. *dōnō grātō*

PLURAL

PLURAL

NOM. *dōna, gifts*NOM. *dōna grāta*GEN. *dōnōrum, of the gifts*GEN. *dōnōrum grātōrum*DAT. *dōnīs, to or for the gifts*DAT. *dōnīs grātīs*ACC. *dōna, gifts* [*gifts*]ACC. *dōna grāta*ABL. *dōnīs, from, with, by the*ABL. *dōnīs grātīs*

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in -a. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following :

1. *Mārcus agricola filiae equum dat, Marcus, the farmer, gives (his) daughter a horse, OR gives a horse to (his) daughter.*
2. *Mārcō amicō cibum dō, I give Marcus (my) friend food, OR I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amicō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, *c*, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **filiae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Apposition.** — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains.*

2. **Indirect Object.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

59.

VOCABULARY

bellum, i, n., *war*.

dōnum, i, n., *gift*.

oppidum, i, n., *town*.

frūmentum, i, n., *grain*.

vīnum, i, n., *wine*.

in, prep. with acc.,¹ *into, to, against*; with abl., *in, on, over*.

Mārcus, i, m., *Marcus*.

incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

Rōmānus, i, m., *Roman*.

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing* (followed by dat.).

dō, *I give*.

portō, *I carry*.

60.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Malum servum culpāmus.** 2. **Laudantne domini superbi servōs fidōs?** 3. **Equi domini sunt in magnō hortō.**

¹ See 47, footnote 2. The accusative is used with **in** when the verb expresses motion into, toward, or against (some place, person, etc.). **Vinum in oppidum portat**, *he is carrying wine into the town*.

4. Ubi servī cibum dominōrum servant? 5. Agricolaē fidōs equōs nōn semper laudant. 6. Est cibus in dominī hortō. 7. Fēmina amīcī filiam vocat.

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the slaves. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidīs; bella; vinō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fidus. 3. Incolīs vinum damus. 4. Bellum Rōmānis grātum est. 5. Cibus in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus, agricolārū amīcus, Rōmānus est. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentum portant. 8. Filiae rēginae in hortō sunt. 9. Vinum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōna incolīs oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vinum servis datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum et vinum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good master. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the haughty Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry grain into the town. 7. There is good grain in the town.

(READING SELECTION 442)

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

SINGULAR

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| NOM. | bonus | bona | bonum |
| GEN. | boni | bonae | boni |
| DAT. | bono | bonae | bono |
| ACC. | bonum | bonam | bonum |
| VOC. | bone | bona | bonum |
| ABL. | bono | bona | bono |

PLURAL

| | | | |
|------|---------|---------|---------|
| NOM. | boni | bonae | bona |
| GEN. | bonorum | bonarum | bonorum |
| DAT. | bonis | bonis | bonis |
| ACC. | bonos | bonas | bona |
| VOC. | boni | bonae | bona |
| ABL. | bonis | bonis | bonis |

Decline together *amicus fidus*, *faithful friend*; *puella parva*, *little girl*; *oppidum magnum*, *large town*.

63. Examine the following:

1. *Amicus est fidus*, *the friend is faithful*.
2. *Agricolae sunt validi*, *the farmers are sturdy*.
3. *Puellae sunt parvae*, *the girls are small*.
4. *Nautas superbos non amamus*, *we do not like proud sailors*.

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.

b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings.

Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together *nauta bonus, the good sailor; poculum magnum, the large cup; agricola validus, the strong farmer.*

65. RULE. — Agreement of Adjectives. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked.</i> | <i>lātus, a, um, wide, broad.</i> |
| <i>magnus, a, um, great, large.</i> | <i>novus, a, um, new.</i> |
| <i>parvus, a, um, small.</i> | <i>fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.</i> |
| <i>meus, a, um, my, mine.</i> | <i>superbus, a, um, proud,</i> |
| <i>tuus, a, um, your, yours.</i> | <i>haughty.</i> |
| <i>grātus, a, um, acceptable,</i> | <i>validus, a, um, strong, sturdy.</i> |
| <i>pleasing.</i> | <i>convocō, I call together, I</i> |
| <i>albus, a, um, white.</i> | <i>summon.</i> |
| <i>cārus, a, um, dear.</i> | <i>hodiē, adv., to-day.</i> |
| <i>perītus, a, um, skillful.</i> | <i>nunc, adv., now.</i> |
| <i>longus, a, um, long.</i> | |

67.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Filiae equīs cibum dant. 2. Inopia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta. 3. Vocātisne incolās Galliae? 4. Ubi Rōmānī pugnant? 5. Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant. 6. Nauta Mārcō agricolae bonum vīnum dat.

II. 1. The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter. 2. The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, is in the town. 3. They give the women money. 4. He is carrying grain into the town.

68.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant. 2. Ubi est hodiē nauta perītus? 3. In oppidō nunc est nauta. 4. Dōna meis amicīs sunt semper grāta. 5. Equum

agricolae validō fēminae dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea filia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodīe perītōs agricolās nōn culpāmuš. 10. Dōna rēgīnae incolās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocās?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are loyal inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

69.

Paradigms

puer, boy

ager, field

vir, man

Stem **puero-**

Stem **agro-**

Stem **viro-**

Base **puer-**

Base **agr-**

Base **vir-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **puer**

ager

vir

GEN. **puerī**

agrī

virī

DAT. **puerō**

agrō

virō

ACC. **puerum**

agrum

virum

ABL. **puerō**

agrō

virō

PLURAL

NOM. **puerī**

agrī

virī

GEN. **puerōrum**

agrōrum

virōrum

DAT. **puerīs**

agrīs

virīs

ACC. **puerōs**

agrōs

virōs

ABL. **puerīs**

agrīs

virīs

1. Are the case endings the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 24, 5, footnote.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no **e** before **r**.

70. Only a very few nouns are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension in **-er** are declined like **ager**.

Like **ager** decline **liber**, *book*.

Like the plural of **puer** decline **liberi**, *children*.

71.

VOCABULARY

liber, **libri**, m., *book*.

Gallus, **ī**, m., *a Gaul*.

liberi, **liberōrum**, m. (plur.),
children.

vir, **virī**, m., *man*.

puer, **pueri**, m., *boy*.

magister, **magistri**, m.,
teacher.

discipulus, **ī**, m., *pupil*.

multus, **a**, **um**, *much*; plur.,

ager, **agri**, m., *field*.

many.

72.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmenti est in Galliā. 2. Incolīs oppidi magni equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vita Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram insulam frūmentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many¹ sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

¹ *Many sturdy = many and sturdy.*

are summoning many troops into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Multi librī sunt in oppidō. 2. Virī puellās et puerōs laudant. 3. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 4. Liber meō discipulō est grātus. 5. Rēgina liberōs in oppidum convocat. 6. Discipulī magistri amīcum laudant. 7. Multi agricolae nunc in agrō sunt. 8. Filia mea liberōs magistri laudat. 9. Incolārum agrī sunt lātī. 10. Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpāt. 11. Ubi nunc sunt filiae meae librī? 12. Equī multōs virōs in silvam portant.



A Roman School

II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her teacher. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the slaves into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**, **(-e)ra**, **(-e)rum**

74.

filius, sonStem **filio-**Base **fili-****proellum, battle**Stem **proelio-**Base **proeli-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **filius**GEN. **fili (fili)**DAT. **filiō**ACC. **filium**VOC. **fili**ABL. **filiō****proellum****proeli (proeli)****proeliō****proellum****proellum****proeliō**

PLURAL

NOM. **fili**GEN. **filiōrum**DAT. **filiis**ACC. **filiōs**VOC. **fili**ABL. **filiis****proelia****proeliōrum****proeliis****proelia****proelia****proeliis**

1. The genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally ends in **-i** (not **-ii**). The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōnsilium, plan**; (gen.) **cōnsilī**.¹
2. In proper names in **-ius** and **filius**, the vocative singular ends in **-i**: **fili, (O) son**; **Mercurius, (voc.) Mercūri**,¹ (*O*) *Mercury*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.
3. Do these nouns differ in any other way from those in Lesson 5?

¹ In such forms the penult is accented, even though short. Contrast 20, 3.

75-

 liber, *free*

Stem libero-

Base liber-

SINGULAR

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| NOM. | liber | libera | liberum |
| GEN. | liberī | liberae | liberī |
| DAT. | liberō | liberae | liberō |
| | | etc. | |

 pulcher, *beautiful*

Stem pulchro-

Base pulchr-

SINGULAR

| | | | |
|------|---------|----------|----------|
| NOM. | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| GEN. | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchrī |
| DAT. | pulchrō | pulchrae | pulchrō |
| | | etc. | |

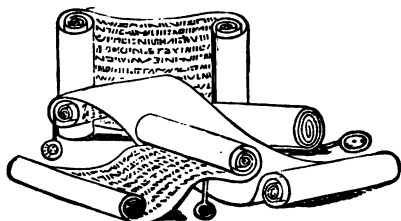
1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um** are declined in the masculine like **dominus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er**, **-era**, **-erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er**, **-ra**, **-rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (29) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

liber, libera, liberum, free.

liberī, liberōrum, m. (plur.), children.

liber, librī, m., book.



Roman Books

77. SUMMARY OF NOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. Sing. Endings

-a

Gender

Feminine

(Except names of males, 27, 28)

SECOND DECLENSION

-us

-ius

-er

-ir

-um

-ium

Masculine

Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular not like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? in that of the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in -er that have e before the r of the base.

78.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| filius, filii, m., <i>son.</i> | proelium, proeli, n., <i>battle.</i> |
| nūntius, i, m., <i>messenger.</i> | miser, misera, miserum, |
| gladius, i, m., <i>sword.</i> | <i>wretched, poor.</i> |
| pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, <i>beautiful, pretty.</i> | asper, aspera, asperum, <i>rough, fierce.</i> |
| tener, tenera, tenerum, <i>tender, delicate, dainty.</i> | niger, nigra, nigrum, <i>black.</i> |
| aedificium, i, n., <i>building.</i> | piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>slow, lazy.</i> |

79.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. In agrō Mārci amīci sunt multī equī. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistri, puerum dēlectat. 3. Multī agricolae magnōs equōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Ītaliae? 5. Puerōs fidōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiī liberōs in oppidum convocat?

II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā pulchra sunt. 2. Ubi tuī, fili, librī sunt? 3. Nūntiōrum sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī multōs gladiōs in aedificium portant. 5. Rosae multae et tenerae in asperā silvā sunt. 6. Agricolae miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna mei amīci filiīs et filiābus grāta sunt. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpat?

*Latinic
(abd)
plural*

10. Nūntī filiō multōs librōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae liberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multī gladii.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Marcus,¹ are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.

(READING SELECTION 443)

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF *sum*. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of *sum* are conjugated as follows:

| IMPERFECT | | FUTURE | |
|--|--|--|--|
| | | SINGULAR | |
| 1. <i>eram, I was</i> | | 1. <i>erō, I shall be</i> | |
| 2. <i>erās, you were</i> | | 2. <i>eris, you will be</i> | |
| 3. <i>erat, he was, there was</i> | | 3. <i>erit, he will be, there will be</i> | |
| | | PLURAL | |
| 1. <i>erāmus, we were</i> | | 1. <i>erimus, we shall be</i> | |
| 2. <i>erātis, you were</i> | | 2. <i>eritis, you will be</i> | |
| 3. <i>erant, they were, there were</i> | | 3. <i>erunt, they will be, there will be</i> | |

1. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular?
See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of *sum*?

82. **Order of Words.** — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order

¹ Be careful as to the position of this word. See page 27, footnote 1.

may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.
The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not usually change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example:

1. **Caesar agricolās fidōs laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. **Caesar fidōs agricolās laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
3. **Agricolās fidōs laudat Caesar**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*

The first sentence shows the normal¹ order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show. In the second sentence **fidōs** is more emphatic than in the first. In the third **agricolās fidōs** and **Caesar** are emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., **vīta**, *vital*; **nauta**, *nautical*. Also watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., **ager**, *field*; **agricola**, *farmer*. *Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.*

¹ The normal order of a Latin sentence is (1) subject with modifiers, (2) indirect object with modifiers, (3) direct object with modifiers, (4) adverb, (5) verb. But this normal order very often gives way to considerations of emphasis or clearness.

| | | | | |
|------------|---------|----------|---------|------------|
| incola | gladius | agricola | lūna | aedificium |
| discipulus | vir | patria | porta | frūmentum |
| vīnum | ager | cōpia | fābula | oppidum |
| sagitta | fēmina | vīta | Insula | dōnum |
| proelium | nūntius | pecūnia | amīcus | bellum |
| puer | hortus | terra | dominus | magister |
| via | silva | rēgina | servus | liber |
| rosa | inopia | stella | filia | |
| cibus | nauta | equus | filius | |

84.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis; eritis; estis.
 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Filiī agricolae
 erant parvī. 6. Filia nūntī erat in insulā pulchrā.
 7. Rēginae cōpiae erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn
 erant pigri. 9. Ubi gladius mei amīcī erat? 10. In
 magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will
 be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were;
 he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was
 not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce
 inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON II

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION
 AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 26 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four
 classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distin-
 guished by the vowel before the *-re* of the present infinitive
 active. Thus:

| CONJUGATION | PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE | DISTINGUISHING VOWEL |
|-------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| I. | amāre , <i>to love</i> | ā |
| II. | monēre , <i>to advise</i> | ē |
| III. | regere , <i>to rule</i> | e |
| IV. | audire , <i>to hear</i> | i |

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows:

| PRES. IND. | PRES. INF. | PERF. IND. | PERF. PART. |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| amō <i>I love</i> | amā re <i>to love</i> | amāv i <i>I have loved</i> | amāt us <i>loved</i> |
| | present stem | perfect stem | participial stem |

87.

Paradigm

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābam**, *I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. **amābās**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābat**, *he was loving, loved, did love*

PLURAL

1. **amābāmus**, *we were loving, loved, did love*
2. **amābātis**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābant**, *they were loving, loved, did love*

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. amābō , <i>I shall love</i> | 1. amābimus , <i>we shall love</i> |
| 2. amābis , <i>you will love</i> | 2. amābitis , <i>you will love</i> |
| 3. amābit , <i>he will love</i> | 3. amābunt , <i>they will love</i> |

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem **amā-** imperf., **amā-bam**

amō pres. stem **amā-** fut., **amā-bō**

2. That the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs:

parō, *prepare*, **parāre**, **parāvī**, **parātus**

laudō, *praise*, **laudāre**, **laudāvī**, **laudātus**

culpō, *blame*, **culpāre**, **culpāvī**, **culpātus**

convocō, *summon*, **convocāre**, **convocāvī**, **convocātus**

89.

VOCABULARY

locus, **i**, **m.**, plur., **locī**, **m.**, **idōneus**, **a**, **um**, *fit, suitable.*

and **loca**, **n.**, *place.*

praemium, **i**, **n.**, *reward.*

pilum, **i**, **n.**, *javelin.*

saxum, **i**, **n.**, *rock.*

tēlum, **i**, **n.**, *weapon.*

castra, **ōrum**, **n.** (plur.), *camp.*

parō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *prepare.*

comparō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *provide, get (bring) together.*

vide, get (bring) together.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against.*

hasta, **ae**, **f.**, *spear.*

90.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī filiābus agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Cūr fidum nautam culpātis? 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In silvam nūntiōs convocāt. 5. Inopia cibī et vīnī virōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Multī gladii semper in oppidō sunt.

II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat; laudābant; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus; comparābās; dabunt. 3. Portābimus; culpābitis; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs parābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis? 8. Ubi est locus castrīs idōneus? 9. Fili praemium erit pulchrum pīlum. 10. Idōneās hastās virīs dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pila sunt in castrīs. 12. Gallī bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give; they gave; she was giving. 2. We praised; he will blame; we are summoning. 3. They will carry; we shall give; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92.

Paradigm

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō, I love*

SINGULAR

PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH
CONNECTING VOWEL

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love</i> | -ī |
| 2. amāvístī, <i>you have loved, etc.</i> | -ístī |
| 3. amāvit, <i>he has loved, etc.</i> | -it |

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1. amāvimus, <i>we have loved, etc.</i> | -imus |
| 2. amāvístis, <i>you have loved, etc.</i> | -istis |
| 3. amāvērunt, or amāvēre, ¹ <i>they have loved, etc.</i> | -ērunt(-ēre ¹) |

¹ This form is rare. Always use the forms in -ērunt.

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or state (condition) *completed* by or at the present time, the imperfect an act or state *going on, repeated, or continued* in past time.
3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following:

1. *Hastis et sagittis pugnābant, they fought with spears and arrows.*
2. *Equis frūmentum portābimus, we shall bring grain by means-of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives *hastis, sagittis, equis* express the *means* or *instrument*, the things with or by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. RULE. — Ablative of Means or Instrument. — *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>lēgātus</i> , I, m., <i>ambassador</i> , <i>lieutenant.</i> | <i>dō, dare, dedi</i> , ¹ <i>datus</i> , <i>give.</i> |
| <i>Graecus</i> , I, m., <i>a Greek.</i> | <i>oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus</i> , <i>attack,</i> <i>besiege.</i> |
| <i>pauci</i> , ae, a, <i>few, a few.</i> | <i>arma, ōrum</i> , n. (plur.), <i>arms,</i> <i>weapons.</i> |
| <i>superō, āre, āvi, ātus</i> , <i>sur-</i> <i>pass, conquer, overcome.</i> | <i>hiberna, ōrum</i> , n. (plur.), <i>win-</i> <i>ter quarters.</i> |
| <i>armō, āre, āvi, ātus</i> , <i>arm,</i> <i>equip.</i> | <i>Helvētius</i> , I, m., <i>a Helvetian.</i> |

¹ Note the irregular perfect.

96.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominus meus dōna filiābus dabit. 2. Nautae fidī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servi pigri multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

97.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnāvisti; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētīi oppidum saxīs et armīs oppugnābant. 4. Equīs in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Pauca arma virīs dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmānī Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Servi multum frūmentum in hiberna portāvērunt. 8. Rōmānī Helvētiōrum oppida sagittīs et pilīs oppugnābant. 9. Incolās insulae tēlīs armābimus. 10. In hibernīs sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastis et sagittīs superāvit. 12. Locus hibernīs idōneus est.

II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By-means-of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.

(READING SELECTION 444)



Pilum

do
nā
dāt

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND
FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō, I love*

SINGULAR

1. *amāveram, I had loved*
2. *amāverās, you had loved*
3. *amāverat, he had loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverāmus, we had loved*
2. *amāverātis, you had loved*
3. *amāverant, they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. *amāverō, I shall have loved*
2. *amāveris, you will have loved*
3. *amāverit, he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverimus, we shall have loved*
2. *amāveritis, you will have loved*
3. *amāverint, they will have loved*

1. The pluperfect is formed by the combination of the perfect stem *amāv-* and *-eram*; the future perfect by the combination of the same stem and *-erō*. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Present Tense, | First one of the principal parts. |
| Imperfect Tense, | Present stem + bam . |
| Future Tense, | Present stem + bō . |
| Perfect Tense, | Third one of the principal parts. |
| Pluperfect Tense, | Perfect stem + eram . |
| Future Perfect Tense, | Perfect stem + erō . |

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies:

| | | | | |
|-------|---------|------|---------|--------|
| laudō | vocō | parō | oppugnō | servō |
| culpō | convocō | dō | portō | superō |

- I. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, ¹ <i>hasten</i> (usually with an infinitive; never followed by <i>ad</i> and the acc.). | ferus, a, um, <i>wild, barbarous.</i> |
| expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>capture, take by storm.</i> | impedimentum, i, n., <i>hindrance; (plur.), baggage.</i> |
| mox, <i>adv., soon.</i> | vicus, i, m., <i>village.</i> |
| | ad, <i>prep. with acc., to, towards, near.</i> |

¹ The masculine form of the perfect participle is usually found only with transitive verbs. With other verbs the form in **-um**, or the future active participle in **-ūrus**, if they occur, are used.

102.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiis et sagittis incolās oppidī superāvērunt. 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Gallī parābunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolās pilis armāvit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautae peritō dēdērunt. 6. In oppidum puellās et puerōs convocābant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparāre mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Multa impedimenta in vicum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēginam portābant. 7. Rēginae cōpiae ferae erant. 8. Ad¹ oppidum frūmentī cōpia erat. 9. Multōs vicōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiis ad¹ impedimenta pugnāverant. 11. Magnam² pecūniam incolis nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken-by-storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

¹ near.² = much.

LESSON 14

SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in *ē* are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

PRIN. PARTS : *moneō, I advise, warn, monēre, monuī, monitus*
videō, I see, vidēre, vidī, visus

| | | |
|----------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| PRES. | <i>moneō, I warn</i> | <i>videō, I see</i> |
| IMPF. | <i>monēbam, I warned</i> | <i>vidēbam, I saw</i> |
| FUT. | <i>monēbō, I shall warn</i> | <i>vidēbō, I shall see</i> |
| PERF. | <i>monuī, I have warned</i> | <i>vidī, I have seen</i> |
| PLUP. | <i>monueram, I had warned</i> | <i>videram, I had seen</i> |
| FUT. PF. | <i>monuerō, I shall have warned</i> | <i>viderō, I shall have seen</i> |

105. CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *moneō*

- | | |
|-------|---|
| SING. | 1. <i>moneō, I advise, am advising, do advise</i> |
| | 2. <i>monēs, you advise, etc.</i> |
| | 3. <i>monet, he advises, etc.</i> |
| PLUR. | 1. <i>monēmus, we advise, etc.</i> |
| | 2. <i>monētis, you advise, etc.</i> |
| | 3. <i>monent, they advise, etc.</i> |

- Observe that the *-ē-* of the present stem, unlike the *-ā-* of *amō*, is retained before the personal ending *-o* of the first person singular.
- What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of *moneō*? of *amō*?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **monēō**

SINGULAR

1. **mónui**, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. **monuísti**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **mónuit**, *he has advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **monúimus**, *we have advised, etc.*
2. **monuístis**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **monuérunt** (**monuére**), *they have advised, etc.*

- I. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of **amō**. Note that the perfect stem **monu-** does not end in **v**, as in **amō**, perfect stem **amāv-**.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *I have, hold*
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, *I see*

108.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| monēō, monēre, monuī, monitus , <i>advise, warn.</i> | <i>move; castra movēre, break up camp.</i> |
| habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus , <i>have, hold.</i> | dimicō, āre, āvi, ātum , <i>fight, contend.</i> |
| videō, vidēre, vidi, visus , <i>see.</i> | praeda , <i>ae, f., booty, spoil.</i> |
| terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus , <i>frighten, scare.</i> | periculum , <i>i, n., danger.</i> |
| moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtus , | cum , <i>prep. with abl., with.</i> |

109.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Saxīs tēlīs¹ Gallī cum Rōmānīs pugnābant.
2. Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs parāverant. 3. Ad
portam liberōs portāvērunt. 4. Paucōs librōs amīcō meō
dedi. 5. Rōmānī multa arma in hiberna portābunt.
6. Cūr oppidum expugnāre mātūrāvērunt?

II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins.
2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not
always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my
friend a book?

110.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbat; vidit; terruerat. 2. Viderimus; mōvistī;
habēbis. 3. Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint. 4. Rōmānī
cum Helvētiīs dimicābant. 5. Periculum magnum oppidī
incolās terruerat. 6. Praedam in vicīs multam vidērunt.
7. Gallī cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant. 8. Vidistine tuum
periculum? 9. Puerī multa praemia habēbunt. 10. Rō-
mānī gladiīs et pilīs agricolās terruērunt. 11. Mox cōpiam
frūmentī habuerit. 12. Praeda nautās pigrōs dēlectābit.

II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have
had. 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have
fought. 3. The Gauls broke up camp. 4. They had con-
tended with the inhabitants. 5. The messenger frightened
the lieutenant by the story. 6. There is great danger in
wine.

¹ In apposition with saxīs (see 58).



Gladius

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

111. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or in -i-.

112.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

| Stem and Base } | <i>dux, m., leader, general</i> | <i>miles, m., soldier</i> | <i>virtūs, f., virtue</i> | <i>caput, n., head</i> | CASE ENDINGS OF CONSO- NANT STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i> | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|--|-------|
| | <i>duc-</i> | <i>milit-</i> | <i>virtūt-</i> | <i>capit-</i> | | |
| | SINGULAR | | | | | |
| NOM. | <i>dux</i> | <i>mīles</i> | <i>virtūs</i> | <i>caput</i> | (-s) | |
| GEN. | <i>ducis</i> | <i>militis</i> | <i>virtūtis</i> | <i>capitis</i> | -is | -is |
| DAT. | <i>duci</i> | <i>militi</i> | <i>virtūti</i> | <i>capiti</i> | -i | -i |
| ACC. | <i>ducem</i> | <i>militem</i> | <i>virtutem</i> | <i>caput</i> | -em | |
| ABL. | <i>duce</i> | <i>militē</i> | <i>virtūte</i> | <i>capite</i> | -e | -e |
| | PLURAL | | | | | |
| NOM. | <i>ducēs</i> | <i>mīlitēs</i> | <i>virtūtēs</i> | <i>capita</i> | -ēs | -a |
| GEN. | <i>ducum</i> | <i>mīlitum</i> | <i>virtūtum</i> | <i>capitum</i> | -um | -um |
| DAT. | <i>ducibus</i> | <i>militibus</i> | <i>virtutibus</i> | <i>capitibus</i> | -ibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | <i>ducēs</i> | <i>militēs</i> | <i>virtūtēs</i> | <i>capita</i> | -ēs | -a |
| ABL. | <i>ducibus</i> | <i>militibus</i> | <i>virtutibus</i> | <i>capitibus</i> | -ibus | -ibus |

1. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2 and contrast 25). Both are obtained by dropping the ending -is of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the case endings, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king*.

113.

VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, m., *leader, general*. **rēx**, rēgis, m., *king*.
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier*. **fuga**, ae, f., *flight*.
eques, equitis, m., *horseman*; **in fugam dō**, dare, dedī, datus, (plur.) *cavalry, cavalrymen*. *put to flight*.
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness*, **augeō**, augēre, auxili, auctus, *bravery, virtue*. *increase, enlarge*.
caput, capitīs, n., *head*.

114.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Ad portam nūntium vīdit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs ferīs dīmīcābant? 3. Perīculum fili videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās perītōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Multam praedam in castris viderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniam mox filiae?
- II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters. 2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers. 3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will hasten to besiege the town.

115.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Capitibus; virtūtī; capita. 2. Eques equum laudābat. 3. Mīlītēs impedīmenta in castra portāverant.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium mīlitum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vīdimus. 7. Virtūs militum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est mīlitum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiīs equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Militibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Multum frūmentum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply¹ of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

¹cōpia.

(READING SELECTION 445)



Eques

LESSON 16

 THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS.
 ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

| | cōsul, m., <i>consul</i> ¹ | homō, m., <i>man</i> | pater, m., <i>father</i> | corpus, n., <i>body</i> |
|-----------------------|---|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Stem and Base } | cōsul- | homin- | patr- | corpor- |

SINGULAR

| | | | | |
|------|---------|---------|--------|----------|
| NOM. | cōsul | homō | pater | corpus |
| GEN. | cōsulis | hominis | patris | corporis |
| DAT. | cōsuli | homi | patri | corpori |
| ACC. | cōsulem | hominem | patrem | corpus |
| ABL. | cōsule | homine | patre | corpore |

PLURAL

| | | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|----------|------------|
| NOM. | cōsulēs | hominēs | patrēs | corpora |
| GEN. | cōsulūm | hominūm | patrum | corporum |
| DAT. | cōsulibus | hominibus | patribus | corporibus |
| ACC. | cōsulēs | hominēs | patrēs | corpora |
| ABL. | cōsulibus | hominibus | patribus | corporibus |

1. Are the case endings of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
2. Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum**.

¹ The title of the two presiding magistrates of the Roman commonwealth.

117. Examine the following:

1. **Dux victōriā laetus est**, *the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. **Hominēs cibi inopiā labōrābant**, *the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (a) that the ablatives **victōriā**, **inopiā**, express the *cause* or *reason*; (b) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of*, *on account of*, *from*.

Review 93, 94.

118. **RULE. — Ablative of Cause. — Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.**¹

119.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| cōsul , cōsulis , m., <i>consul.</i> | tempus , temporis , n., <i>time,</i> |
| homō , hominis , m., <i>man.</i> | <i>season.</i> |
| pater , patris , m., <i>father.</i> | vulnus , vulneris , n., <i>wound.</i> |
| corpus , corporis , n., <i>body.</i> | vulnerō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>wound.</i> |
| flūmen , flūminis , n., <i>river.</i> | labōrō , āre , āvī , ātūrus , <i>work,</i> |
| pēs , pedis , m., <i>foot.</i> | <i>suffer.</i> |
| pedes , peditis , m., <i>foot-soldier;</i> | trāns , prep. with acc., <i>across,</i> |
| <i>plur., infantry.</i> | <i>over.</i> |

120.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat.** 2. **Virtūte militēs in fugam dedimus.** 3. **Militēs perītī in castra arma portāvērunt.** 4. **Ducī fidō magnam pecūniam Rōmānī dederant.** 5. **Magna cōpia frūmentī mox in vicō erit.** 6. **Cūr ad portās oppidī tēla portāvit?**

¹ This use of the ablative is found chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing emotion or feeling (joy, sorrow, fear, etc.)

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Multa vulnera sunt in corporibus militum. 3. Tempus proeliō idōneum est. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidī. 6. Miles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs multōs incolās pilīs vulnerāvērunt. 9. Militēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere miser sum. 11. Homō filiōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs militēs trāns flūmen vidit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.



Coin of Caesar

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). VOWEL STEMS, IN -i-

122.

STEMS IN -i-

Paradigms

| | collis, m., <i>hill</i> | caedēs, f., <i>slaughter</i> | mōns, m., <i>mountain</i> | animal, n., <i>animal</i> | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|--|----------------|--------------|
| Stem | colli- | caedi- | monti- | animāli- | | |
| Base | coll- | caed- | mont- | animāl- | | |
| SINGULAR | | | | CASE ENDINGS OF -i- STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i> | | |
| NOM. | collis | caedēs | mōns | animal | (-s) | |
| GEN. | collis | caedis | montis | animālīs | -is | -is |
| DAT. | colli | caedi | monti | animāli | -i | -i |
| ACC. | collem | caedem | montem | animal | -em | |
| ABL. | colle | caede | monte | animāli | -e | -i |
| PLURAL | | | | | | |
| NOM. | collēs | caedēs | montēs | animālia | -ēs | -ia |
| GEN. | collium | caedium | montium | animālium | -ium | -ium |
| DAT. | collibus | caedibus | montibus | animālibus | -ibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | collis,ēs | caedis,ēs | montis,ēs | animālia | -is,-ēs | -ia |
| ABL. | collibus | caedibus | montibus | animālibus | -ibus | -ibus |

1. Compare very carefully these case endings with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. Contrast 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular both in *-i* and in *-e*, though usually in *-i*: *nāvis*, *ship*; *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*; *turris*, *tower*; *finis*, *end*; *avis*, *bird*. All neuter *-i-* stems have the ablative singular in *-i*. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in *-im*: *turris*, *turrim*, *tower*.
4. Decline together: *urbs pulchra*, *beautiful city*; *animal magnum*, *large animal*.

123. Since nouns with *-i-* stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have *-i-* stems. The following classes have *-i-* stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. Nouns in *-is* and *-ēs*, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.
2. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.
3. Nouns of one syllable in *-s* or *-x* following a consonant.
4. Nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*.

124. Decline the following:

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>mare</i> , <i>maris</i> , n., <i>sea</i> . | <i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i> , n., <i>name</i> . |
| <i>urbs</i> , <i>urbis</i> , f., <i>city</i> . | <i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> , f., <i>part</i> . |
| <i>miles</i> , <i>militis</i> , m., <i>soldier</i> . | <i>pōns</i> , <i>pontis</i> , m., <i>bridge</i> . |
| <i>hostis</i> , <i>hostis</i> , m. and f., <i>enemy</i> (usually plural). | <i>sedile</i> , <i>sedilis</i> , n., <i>seat</i> . |

125.

VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with *-i-* stems.)

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>collis</i> , <i>collis</i> , m., <i>hill</i> . | <i>animal</i> , <i>animālis</i> , n., <i>animal</i> . |
| <i>caedēs</i> , <i>caedis</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i> . | <i>nāvis</i> , <i>nāvis</i> , f., <i>ship</i> . |
| <i>mōns</i> , <i>montis</i> , m., <i>mountain</i> . | <i>per</i> , prep. with acc. <i>through</i> , <i>by-means-of</i> . |
| <i>laetus</i> , a, um, <i>glad</i> . | |
| <i>occupō</i> , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>take</i> - <i>possession-of</i> , <i>seize</i> , <i>occupy</i> . | <i>dē</i> , prep. with abl., <i>down</i> <i>from</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>concerning</i> . |

126.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mei patris amicus vulnere labōrāvit. 2. Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit. 3. Galli equitum peritōrum inopiā labōrābant. 4. Multa vulnera in corporibus militum vidisti. 5. Peditēs trāns flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt. 6. Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of a skillful leader. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs dē monte in vicum impedimenta portābant. 2. In nāvibus erant nautae multī et validī. 3. Nōne militēs magnam partem urbis expugnābunt? 4. Miser erat cōsul caede militum validōrum. 5. Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit. 6. In marī sunt nāvēs pulchrae. 7. Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat. 8. In monte erant multa et fera animālia. 9. Cōsul militibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat. 10. Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many¹ lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took-possession-of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened to go² from the hill into the broad fields.

¹ Many lazy = many and lazy. See 127, I, 2, 8.

ire.

LESSON 18

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

128. Gender. — For the general rules for gender see 28.

The rules for gender for the third declension are these, but there are many exceptions:

- 1. Masculine.** — Masculine are nouns in **-ō** (genitive **-ōnis**), **-or** (genitive **-ōris**), **-tor** (genitive **-tōris**), **-er** (genitive **-ris**; cf. **pater, patris**), **-es** (genitive **-itis**), **-eps** (genitive **-ipis**), **-ex** (genitive **-icis**).
- 2. Feminine.** — Feminine are nouns in **-tās, -tūs, -rs** (genitive **-rtis**; cf. **ars, artis**), **-is** and **-ēs** (if genitive is in **-is**), **-dō** or **-gō** (genitive **-dinis, -ginis**), and **-iō** (genitive **-iōnis**).
- 3. Neuter.** — Neuter are nouns in **-al** (genitive **-ālis**), **-en**, **-ar** (genitive **-āris**), **-ur** (genitive **-oris**), **-us** (genitive **-eris** or **-oris**), **-t, -e** (genitive **-is**).

- 1. What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions?**

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) stem, (5) ablative singular, (6) nominative plural, (7) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

| | | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|--------|
| animal | dux | mare | pater | rēx |
| caedēs | eques | mōns | pēs | tempus |
| caput | flūmen | miles | pedes | urbs |
| cōnsul | homō | nāvis | pōns | vulnus |
| collis | hostis | nōmen | pars | virtūs |

130. Examine the following :

1. **Hieme labōrāmus**, *in winter we work.*
2. **Decem mēnsibus multās urbēs vidit**, *within ten months he saw many cities.*
3. **Primā lūce hostēs in fugam dedērunt**, *at daybreak they put the enemy to flight.*

Observe that the ablatives **hieme**, **decem mēnsibus**, **primā lūce**, tell *when* or *within what time* the action of the verb took place, and that no preposition is used in Latin.

131. RULE. — **Ablative of Time.** — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

132.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| nox , noctis , f. (gen. plur. noctium), <i>night.</i> | annus , ī , m., <i>year.</i> |
| hiems , hiemis , f., <i>winter.</i> | primus , a , um , <i>first.</i> |
| aestās , aestātis , f., <i>summer.</i> | decem , indecl., <i>ten.</i> |
| lūx , lūcis , f., <i>light, daylight.</i> | quattuor , indecl., <i>four.</i> |
| | multā nocte , <i>late at night.</i> |

133.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Aestāte agrī pulchrī incolās urbis dēlectant.**
 2. **Primā lūce¹ multōs montēs vidimus.** 3. **Hostēs tēlis equitēs vulnerābant.** 4. **Quattuor annis multa oppida hostium dux expugnāverat.** 5. **Cibī inopiā Gallī hieme labōrābant.** 6. **Multā nocte cōsul peditēs in castra convocābit.** 7. **Multās urbēs decem annis dux Helvētiōrum occupāverat.** 8. **Primō annō belli multa oppida expugnāverat.** 9. **Primā lūce hostēs in castris erant.**

II. 1. He captured the city by-means-of his cavalry.
 2. At night the enemy hastened to go toward the Romans'

¹ **Primā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

camp. 3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.¹ 4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At day-break we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. In winter the nights are long. 7. In ten years there are ten summers.

(READING SELECTION 446)

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

¹ The neuter plural *pulchra* means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.



Head of Julius Caesar
(From a silver coin, 38-36 B.C.)

135.**THE HELVETIAN WAR**

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136.**HINTS FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.

3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.

4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I

READING LESSON

DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies, *but not till he has followed the hints given above, 136, 1-4.*)

137. Belgae¹ et Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt.² Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgae sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētīi sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Ōceanī quae (*which*) est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

NOTE. — Learn the principal parts of all the verbs of the first and second conjugations thus far given in this book. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

¹ For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 10.

² Third person plural, present indicative, of *incolō*. Can you not infer its meaning from *incola*?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. AGENCY WITH THE PASSIVE

138. Review 26, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field, the farmer lives happily*; in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon: *the field is plowed by the farmer*.

139.

Paradigms

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

| | SINGULAR | PERSONAL ENDINGS |
|---|----------|------------------|
| 1. amō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i> | | -ō |
| 2. amās, <i>you love, etc.</i> | | -s |
| 3. amat, <i>he loves, etc.</i> | | -t |
| | PLURAL | |
| 1. amāmus, <i>we love, etc.</i> | | -mus |
| 2. amātis, <i>you love, etc.</i> | | -tis |
| 3. amant, <i>they love, etc.</i> | | -nt |

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

| | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. amor, <i>I am loved, am being loved</i> | -r |
| 2. amāris, amāre, <i>you are loved, etc.</i> | -ris, -re |
| 3. amātur, <i>he is loved, etc.</i> | -tur |

PLURAL

| | |
|---|-------|
| 1. amāmur, <i>we are loved, etc.</i> | -mur |
| 2. amāmini, <i>you are loved, etc.</i> | -mini |
| 3. amantur, <i>they are loved, etc.</i> | -ntur |

ACTIVE VOICE

SECOND CONJUGATION

| SINGULAR | PERSONAL ENDINGS |
|---|------------------|
| 1. moneō, <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i> | -ō |
| 2. monēs, <i>you advise, etc.</i> | -s |
| 3. monet, <i>he advises, etc.</i> | -t |

| PLURAL | |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| 1. monēmus, <i>we advise, etc.</i> | -mus |
| 2. monētis, <i>you advise, etc.</i> | -tis |
| 3. monent, <i>they advise, etc.</i> | -nt |

PASSIVE VOICE

| SINGULAR | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. moneor, <i>I am advised, am being advised</i> | -r |
| 2. monēris, monēre, <i>you are advised, etc.</i> | -ris, -re |
| 3. monētur, <i>he is advised, etc.</i> | -tur |

| PLURAL | |
|--|-------|
| 1. monēmur, <i>we are advised, etc.</i> | -mur |
| 2. monēmini, <i>you are advised, etc.</i> | -mini |
| 3. monentur, <i>they are advised, etc.</i> | -ntur |

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| laudō, <i>I praise</i> | vocō, <i>I call</i> |
| videō, <i>I see</i> | terreō, <i>I frighten</i> |

141. Examine the following :

1. *Coniūrāti Caesarem necant, the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. *Caesar ā coniūrātis necātur, Caesar is being killed by the conspirators.*
3. *Caesar gladiō necātur, Caesar is being killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning active into passive :

- a. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive ;
- b. The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, of the active verb is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *ā*.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully the examples 2 and 3 above, and note that a preposition is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a person, while none is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a thing, not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. RULE. — **Agency with the Passive Voice.** — *The personal agent with a passive verb (i.e. the person by whom something is done) is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

143.

VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar*.
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion* (about
 5000 soldiers).

necō, āre, āvi, ātus, *kill*.

ā, ab,¹ prep. with abl., *from*,
by.

ob, prep. with acc., *on-ac-*
count-of, for.

celeritās, ātis, f., *speed, quick-*
ness.

incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *incite*,
encourage, arouse, rouse.

ē, ex,¹ prep. with abl., *out*
of, from.

propter, prep. with acc., *on-*
account-of, for.

¹ Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* use *ab* or *ex*; use *ā* or *ē* before a consonant.

144.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlis Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvis in marī viderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in¹ flūmine erat. 6. Caede liberōrum miserōrum miserī sūmus.

II. 1. In winter the nights are long. 2. Cæsar's cavalry took-possession-of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēmini. 2. Incitant, incitantur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesar militēs convocat. 4. Militēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob² virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce propter² virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibi cōpia ā militibus in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte militum incolae oppidi incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ā militibus in hiberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains to the city.

¹ over.

² In expressions not covered by 118, footnote, ob or propter with the accusative is the normal way of expressing cause. Ob is used especially in connection with rem or causam.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146.

Paradigms

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābar, *I was loved, was being loved*
2. amābāris, amābāre, *you were loved, etc.*
3. amābātur, *he was loved, etc.*

SINGULAR

1. monēbar, *I was advised, was being advised*
2. monēbāris, monēbāre, *you were advised, etc.*
3. monēbātur, *he was advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. amābāmur, *we were loved, etc.*
2. amābāmini, *you were loved, etc.*
3. amābantur, *they were loved, etc.*

PLURAL

1. monēbāmur, *we were advised, etc.*
2. monēbāmini, *you were advised, etc.*
3. monēbantur, *they were advised, etc.*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābor, *I shall be loved*
2. amāberis, amābere, *you will be loved*
3. amābitur, *he will be loved*

SINGULAR

1. monēbor, *I shall be advised*
2. monēberis, monēbere, *you will be advised*
3. monēbitur, *he will be advised*

PLURAL

1. amābimur, *we shall be loved*
2. amābimini, *you will be loved*
3. amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PLURAL

1. monēbimur, *we shall be advised*
2. monēbimini, *you will be advised*
3. monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is *a* in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems *amā-* and *monē-* by adding *-bār* and *-bōr* respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following:

1. Agricola cum cūrā arat, *the farmer plows with care (carefully).*
2. Agricola magnā cum¹ cūrā arat } *the farmer plows with*
3. Agricola magnā cūrā arat } *great care (very carefully)*

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions *cum cūrā*, *magnā cum cūrā*, *magnā cūrā*, express the manner of the action of the verb (*i.e.* how the action of the verb is done).
2. That *magnā cum cūrā* and *magnā cūrā* are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

¹ Notice that the *monosyllabic* preposition is placed between the adjective and the noun.

148. RULE. — Ablative of Manner. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

149.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| studium, i, n., <i>zeal, eagerness.</i> | imperātor, ōris, m., <i>general, commander in chief.</i> |
| cūra, ae, f., <i>care.</i> | |
| obses, obsidis, m. and f., <i>host-age, pledge.</i> | conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>place, station.</i> |
| multitūdō, multitudinis, f., <i>multitude, crowd.</i> | compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus, <i>fill up, complete.</i> |
| imperium, i, n., <i>command, power.</i> | diū, adv., <i>long, for a long time.</i> |

150.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitum celeritāte Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbis pars ā Gallis occupātur. 6. Mīlitēs ā rēge in hiberna convocantur.

II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took-possession-of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābat, laudābātur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur. 2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus dīmīcābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātōre magnō studiō oppugnābātur. 7. Caesarī imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem equitum multitudine complēvit. 9. Liberōs multōs obsidēs Caesarī Gallī dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?

II. 1. You will see, you will be seen. 2. Are we praising? he will be blamed. 3. They were wounded by the infantry with swords. 4. At daybreak the Romans fought eagerly. 5. A large part of the arms was carried very carefully into camp. 6. Many soldiers were seen near the bridge.

(READING SELECTION 447)

LESSON 22

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

152. Review 39, 81, 86. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all Latin verbs have compound forms. They employ the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future tenses respectively of the auxiliary verb **sum**. The participle is like an adjective in form and syntax, and its endings change to agree with the gender and number of the subject of the verb.

Paradigms

PERFECT PASSIVE OF **amō**

| SINGULAR | | PLURAL | |
|----------|----------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. | amātus, | sum, I have been loved, | amāti, |
| | | I was loved | sumus |
| 2. | a, um | es | amāti, |
| | | | ae, a |
| 3. | | est | estis |
| | | | sunt |

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

| | | | |
|----|----------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1. | amātus, | eram, I had been | amāti, |
| | | loved | erāmus |
| 2. | a, um | erās | amāti, |
| | | | ae, a |
| 3. | | erat | erātis |
| | | | erant |

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

| | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|----|---|-----------------|
| 1. | amātus, { erō, <i>I shall have been loved</i> | amātī, { erimus |
| 2. | a, um { eris | ae, a { eritis |
| 3. | { erit | { erunt |

1. In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of **moneō**, **videō**, **portō**, giving English meanings.
2. Note carefully that the participle is declined like **bonus**, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,

I (a girl) have been loved, amāta sum
we (girls) have been loved, amātae sumus
the town had been seen, oppidum visum erat
the girl has been loved, puella amāta est

3. For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship, alliance.</i> | civis, civis, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i> |
| pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i> | civitās, ātis, f., <i>state, citizenship.</i> |
| mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i> | cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>strengthen, establish.</i> |
| iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road, journey (501).</i> | contineō, continēre, continui, <i>hold together, restrain, hem in, bound.</i> |
| ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i> | |

154.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt.
2. Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt.
3. Pāx

cum multis civitatibus est confirmata. 4. Cives ob amicitiam laudavimus. 5. Galli montibus et fluminibus continebantur. 6. Multa oppida decem mensibus occupata erant. 7. Magna Helvetiorum urbs ex itinere est expugnata. 8. Multum frumentum ex agris in hiberna portatum erat. 9. Caesar milites in castris habebat. 10. Multi homines a Romanis erant necati. 11. Multos civis in Italia vidimus. 12. Urbs ab imperatore magno cum studio expugnata est.

II. 1. She was restrained ; you (plur.) had been blamed. 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased ; they have been summoned. 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls. 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders. 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city. 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery. 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march. 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.

*Civis*

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE
TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

acer, sharp, keen, eager

Stem *ācri-*

Base *ācr-*

SINGULAR

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| NOM. | <i>ācer</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācre</i> |
| GEN. | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> |
| DAT. | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> |
| ACC. | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācre</i> |
| ABL. | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> |

#

PLURAL

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|------|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| GEN. | <i>ācrium</i> | <i>ācrium</i> | <i>ācrium</i> |
| DAT. | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>ācris, ēs</i> | <i>ācris, ēs</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| ABL. | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> |

- I. Note that adjectives of this declension have *-i-* stems, and that the ablative singular ends in *-ī*. Review 122.

156. Examine the following :

- I. *Helvētī Gallōs virtūte superant, the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. Vir nōmine, nōn factis, amicus erat, *the man was a friend in name, (but) not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives *virtūte, nōmine, factis*, tell in *what respect* the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. RULE. — Ablative of Specification. — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective, applies. No preposition is used.*

158.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| altus, a, um, <i>high, deep.</i> | finis, finis, m., <i>end; (plur.)</i> |
| angustus, a, um, <i>narrow, contracted.</i> | <i>boundary, territory.</i> |
| noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i> | finitimus, a, um, <i>neighboring, adjoining; finitimi, ōrum, m., neighbors.</i> |
| acer, acris, acre, <i>keen, sharp, eager, fierce.</i> | quod, conj., <i>because.</i> |
| equester, equestris, equestre, <i>of the cavalry; cavalry (adj.).</i> | -que, and, an enclitic, always attached to the second of two words connected. |
| | magnitūdō, inis, f., <i>greatness, size.</i> |

159.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux filium propter virtutem laudāverat. 2. Pāx quattuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multis civitātibus erat cōfirmāta. 3. Multā nocte cōpiae ex agris in castra convocābantur. 4. Militēs hieme in hiberna convocāti sunt. 5. Multi incolae gladiis equitum vulnerāti erant.

II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

160.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiōrum fīnibus erant. 2. Iter per finēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmānī virtūte, nōn magnitudīne corporis, Gallōs superābant. 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae angusta et alta erant. 6. Equitēs ā Caesare laudātī sunt, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt. 7. Ācrēs peritaeque¹ erant cōpiae cōsulis. 8. Peditēs Caesaris proeliō ācrēs erant. 9. Cūr Helvētīi ā ducibus incitātī sunt? Quod altis montibus et flūminibus lātis continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestrī proeliō superātī erant.

II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

¹ Notice to which word *-que* is added. Translate *-que* *before* the word to which it is attached.



Galli

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS AND ONE TERMINATION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike in all cases. Except comparatives (see 257), they are all declined like the following :

facilis, easy

Stem *facili-*

Base *facil-*

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

| | |
|------|----------------|
| NOM. | facilis |
| GEN. | facilis |
| DAT. | facili |
| ACC. | facilem |
| ABL. | facili |

Neuter

| |
|----------------|
| facile |
| facilis |
| facili |
| facile |
| facili |

PLURAL

| | |
|------|---------------------|
| NOM. | facilēs |
| GEN. | facilium |
| DAT. | facilibus |
| ACC. | facilis (ēs) |
| ABL. | facilibus |

| |
|------------------|
| facilia |
| facilium |
| facilibus |
| facilia |
| facilibus |

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following :

audāx, boldStem **audāci-**Base **audāc-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

| | |
|------|------------|
| NOM. | audāx |
| GEN. | audācis |
| DAT. | audācī |
| ACC. | audācem |
| ABL. | audācī (e) |

Neuter

| |
|------------|
| audāx |
| audācis |
| audācī |
| audāx |
| audācī (e) |

PLURAL

| | |
|------|--------------|
| NOM. | audācēs |
| GEN. | audācium |
| DAT. | audācibus |
| ACC. | audācis (ēs) |
| ABL. | audācibus |

| |
|-----------|
| audācia |
| audācium |
| audācibus |
| audācia |
| audācibus |

Observe

1. That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
2. That adjectives of the third declension ending in **-er** have three terminations, those in **-is** two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
3. That they have **-i-** stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only **-ī** in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following :

1. **Filius patri similis erat**, *the son was like his father.*
2. **Locus castris idōneus erat**, *the place was suitable for a camp.*

Observe that the datives **patri** and **castris** are related to the adjectives **similis** and **idōneus**.

163. RULE.—**Dative with Adjectives.**—*The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| fortis, e, brave, strong. | omnis, e, all, every, the whole. |
| similis, e, like, similar. | brevis, e, brief, short. |
| dissimilis, e, dissimilar, unlike. | pār, gen. paris, equal (to). |
| facilis, e, easy. | vetus,¹ gen. veteris, old, ancient. |
| difficilis, e, difficult. | gēns, gentis, f., race, nation. |
| | populus, i, m., people. |

165.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Helvētīi flūminibus altīs continēbantur.* 2. *Ad flūmen iter angustum erat.* 3. *Cūr finitimī nostrī terren- tur? Quod cum Rōmānis pācem et amicitiam cōfirmā- vimus.* 4. *Caesar equestribus proeliis Gallōs superāvit.* 5. *Peditēs nostrī altis flūminibus terrēbantur.* 6. *Gallōs magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.*

II. 1. *There are many beautiful ships on the sea.* 2. *Our cavalry were fierce in battle.* 3. *Why were they fright- ened? Because they saw many deep rivers and high mountains.* 4. *The bridges have been taken-possession- of by the enemy.*

166.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs.* 2. *Caesar veterēs militēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant.* 3. *Militēs*

¹ This is not an -i- stem; its ablative singular is formed in -e.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevi tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētīi multitūdine hominum populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Puer fortis ā milite vulnerātus est. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multis imperātōribus dissimilis erat. 10. Finitimī nostrī omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and¹ faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people² was not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

(READING SELECTION 448)

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

THE AMBITIOUS DESIGNS OF THE HELVETII UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF ORGETORIX

167. Orgetorix, qui³ princeps erat Helvētiōrum, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit (*formed*) et cum finitimis civitatibus pacem amicitiamque cōfirmāvit. Helvētīi undique nātūrā locī continentur, unā ex parte⁴ flūmine Rhēnō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit,⁵ alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. Quā dē causā⁶ finēs Helvētiōrum angustī erant prō⁷ multitūdine hominum, et emigrāre⁸ cupiēbant.⁹

¹ Use -que. ² *populus Rōmānus*. ³ The relative pronoun *who, which, that*. ⁴ *unā ex parte, on one side*. ⁵ Third person singular of *dividō*. ⁶ *Quā dē causā, for this reason*. ⁷ *in proportion to*. ⁸ *to emigrate*. ⁹ Third person plural imperfect of *cupiō*.

LESSON 26

 PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *sum*.
 REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

 PRIN. PARTS : *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

| PERFECT | PLUPERFECT SINGULAR | FUTURE PERFECT |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>fui, I have been, I was</i> | <i>fueraam, I had been</i> | <i>fuero, I shall have been</i> |
| 2. <i>fuiſti</i> | <i>fueraſ</i> | <i>fueriſ</i> |
| 3. <i>fuit</i> | <i>fueraat</i> | <i>fuerti</i> |
| | PLURAL | |
| 1. <i>fuimua</i> | <i>fueraamua</i> | <i>fuerimua</i> |
| 2. <i>fuiſtiſ</i> | <i>fueraatiſ</i> | <i>fuertiſ</i> |
| 3. <i>fuērunt (fuēre)</i> | <i>fueraant</i> | <i>fuerint</i> |

- Obſerve that the perfect ſtem is *fu-*, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this ſtem by adding *-eram* and *-erō*.
- Are the personal endings regular ?

169. The following verbs of the firſt and ſecond conjugations have been introduced in the preceding leſſons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why muſt one know the principal parts of a verb ?

| | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| <i>pugnō</i> | <i>conlocō</i> | <i>videō</i> | <i>laudō</i> | <i>superō</i> | <i>mātūrō</i> |
| <i>expugnō</i> | <i>cōfirmō</i> | <i>contineō</i> | <i>culpō</i> | <i>armō</i> | <i>incitō</i> |
| <i>oppugnō</i> | <i>comparō</i> | <i>compleō</i> | <i>ſervō</i> | <i>occupō</i> | <i>labōrō</i> |
| <i>vocō</i> | <i>augeō</i> | <i>moveō</i> | <i>dēlectō</i> | <i>vulnerō</i> | <i>necō</i> |
| <i>convocō</i> | <i>habeō</i> | <i>moneō</i> | <i>dō</i> | <i>dīmicō</i> | <i>terreō</i> |
| | | | <i>portō</i> | | |

- What is the force of *con (com)* in a compound verb ?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of *incitō*. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of *habeō* in the second person and *augeō* in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS: *incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, arouse, urge on*

| | | ACTIVE | PASSIVE | | |
|------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| Present Stem <i>incitā-</i> | PRES. | <i>Sing. incitat</i> | <i>incitātur</i> | | Participial Stem <i>incitāt-</i> |
| | | <i>Plur. incitant</i> | <i>incitantur</i> | | |
| | IMP. | <i>Sing. incitābat</i> | <i>incitābātur</i> | | |
| | | <i>Plur. incitābant</i> | <i>incitābantur</i> | | |
| Perfect Stem <i>incitāv-</i> | FUT. | <i>Sing.</i> | | | |
| | | <i>Plur.</i> | | | |
| | PERF. | <i>Sing.</i> | | | |
| | | <i>Plur.</i> | | | |
| | PLUP. | <i>Sing.</i> | | | |
| | | <i>Plur.</i> | | | |
| | FUT. PERF. | <i>Sing.</i> | | | |
| | | <i>Plur.</i> | | | |

171.

VOCABULARY

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus, lay waste, ravage. *reliquus, a, um, the-rest-of, remaining.*

libertās, ātis, f., liberty, freedom. *potēns, potentis, able, powerful.*

prō, prep. with abl., before, in behalf of, for.

172.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Fuerātis; fuerimus; fuistis.* 2. *Gallōrum finēs ab equitibus vāstātī erant.* 3. *Reliquī hostēs prō libertāte diū pugnāverant.* 4. *Belgae nāvibus erant potentēs.*

5. Paucis annis bello finitimis Helvetii superaverant. 6. Pro feminis liberisque magnō cum studiō pugnabant. 7. Reliquae in Galliā gentēs ā nostris finitimis incitatae sunt. 8. Caesar cum quattuor legionibus finēs Helvetiorum vāstāre mātūrābit. 9. Legionēs populi Rōmāni magnitudine corporis Gallōrum terrēbantur. 10. Servus dominō virtūte erat similis. 11. Altis montibus et lātis flūminibus oppidum continētur.

II. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge. 2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste. 3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful. 4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed. 5. The citizens will fight for the general. 6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight. 7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173.

dūcō, I lead

PRIN. PARTS: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus**

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of **dūcō** (518).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of **dūcō** with the present of **moneō** and **amō** in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of *dūcō* with the future of *moneō*, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the characteristic vowel of this conjugation is *short -e-*, that of the second conjugation *long -ē-*.
6. Like *dūcō* conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of *mittō*, *send*, and *vincō*, *conquer*.

174.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>dūcō</i> , ere, <i>dūxi</i> , ductus, <i>lead</i> . | <i>gerō</i> , gerere, gessi, gestus, |
| <i>mittō</i> , ere, <i>misī</i> , missus, <i>send</i> . | <i>carry on</i> , wage. |
| <i>vincō</i> , ere, <i>vici</i> , victus, <i>conquer</i> . | <i>incolō</i> , ere, incolui, —, <i>inhabit</i> . |
| <i>relinquō</i> , ere, reliqui, relictus, <i>leave behind</i> , leave. | <i>neque . . . neque</i> , <i>neither . . . nor</i> . |
| <i>contendō</i> , ere, contendi, contentum, <i>struggle</i> , <i>strive</i> , <i>hasten</i> , <i>hurry</i> , <i>march</i> . | <i>saepe</i> , adv., <i>often</i> , <i>frequently</i> . |

175.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmentī in agrīs est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābulis Gallōrum sunt incitātī. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiīs similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitūdine hominum erant potentēs. 5. Paucī vīcī ab hostibus vāstātī erant. 6. Omnēs prō libertāte magnō studiō pugnābimus.

II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētiī saepe cum finitimīs contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castris erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētiī magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincuntur. 9. Imperātor per finēs Gallōrum contrā Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs contrā īnsulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiīs Rōmānōs superābant.

II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people were waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

(READING SELECTION 449)

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in iō in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

capiō, take

PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *capiō* (520).

1. Observe that the conjugation of *capiō* differs from that of *dūcō* in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from **dūcō**?
3. Like **capiō** conjugate these tenses of **fugiō**, *flee*, and **iaciō**, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **capiō** (518, 520).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of **iaciō**, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| iaciō , <i>iacere</i> , iēcī , iactus , <i>throw, hurl.</i> | interficiō , <i>interficere</i> , interfēcī , <i>interfectus</i> , <i>kill.</i> |
| capiō , <i>capere</i> , cēpī , captus , <i>take, seize, capture, form</i> | trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), <i>ere</i> , trādūxī , trāductus , <i>lead over, transport.</i> |
| fugiō , <i>fugere</i> , fūgī , —, <i>flee, run away.</i> | cōnsilium , ī , <i>n.</i> , <i>advice, prudence, plan.</i> |
| faciō , <i>facere</i> , fēcī , factus , <i>do, make; iter facere, march;</i> | moenia , moenium , <i>n. (plur.), walls, fortifications.</i> |
| proellum facere , <i>fight a battle.</i> | |

180.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquent.* 2. *Neque peditibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt.* 3. *Estne iter ad oppidum facile?* 4. *Rōmānī in hostium finēs multās legiōnēs mittēbant.* 5. *Decem mēnsibus multae gentēs ā cōnsule vincentur.*

II. 1. *The Helvetii often carried on war with their*

- neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūcīmur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum fīnēs iter¹ faciet. 4. Rōmānī ab hostībus cōpiam frūmenti capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte paucī peditēs interfecti erant. 7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor propter cōsiliū proeli lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. 10. Cōsul ad flūmen lātum proelium fēcīt. 11. Multī equitēs ā cōpiīs nostris interficiēntur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.² 5. The Helvetii will march³ out of their⁴ territory. 6. In the winter Caesar used⁵ to form his plans.

¹ iter faciō, march. ² was a good one = was good. ³ march = mak. a march. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ used to form: use the imperfect of capiō.



Caricature of Soldier
(Pompeii)

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE
INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

| | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|--------------|--|--|
| FIRST CONJ. | <i>amāre, to love</i> | <i>amārī, to be loved</i> |
| SECOND CONJ. | <i>monēre, to advise</i> | <i>monērī, to be advised</i> |
| THIRD CONJ. | <i>dūcere, to lead</i> <i>capere, to take</i> | <i>dūcī, to be led</i> <i>capī, to be taken</i> |
| FOURTH CONJ. | <i>audire, to hear</i> | <i>audirī, to be heard</i> |

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second principal part of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final *-e* to *-i*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-i*.

183. Examine the following :

1. *Mātūrat militēs convocāre, he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
 2. *Laudārī est grātum, to be praised is pleasant.*
 3. *Incolās armārī iubet, he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
 4. *Omnēs primī esse cupimus, we all wish to be first.*
 5. *Dēbet interfici, he ought to be killed.*
 6. *Fortis esse dicitur, he is said to be brave.*
 7. *Filiōs bonōs esse cupimus, we wish our sons to be good.*
- a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.
 - b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of *est*. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive*.

- c. In 3, observe that *incolās*, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. So *fiilōs* in 7. In 4, note that the predicate adjective *primi* agrees with the subject of the main verb, *cupimus*, and is therefore nominative. In 7, the predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the infinitive and is therefore accusative.

184. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject of Infinitive.** — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

2. **Complementary Infinitive.** — *Verbs signifying to be willing, determine, be able, dare, begin, cease, be accustomed, etc., are used with an infinitive (complementary infinitive) without subject accusative, to indicate another action of the subject of the verb of willing, determining, etc.*

3. **Predicate Adjective with Infinitive.** — *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185.

VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 3 | <i>dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, say, speak, tell.</i> | <i>cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, place, station, determine, appoint.</i> | 3 |
| 2 | <i>iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus, order, bid.</i> | <i>parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready. [name.]</i> | |
| 2 | <i>dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus, owe, ought.</i> | <i>appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, call, auxiliū, I, n., aid, help.</i> | 1 |
| 3 | <i>cupiō, cupere, cupivi (ii), cupitus, wish, desire.</i> | <i>numerus, I, m., number.</i> | |

186.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Vir peritus esse debet. 2. Pater filium fortem esse cupit. 3. Helvetii legatos de pace ad Caesarem mittere parati sunt. 4. Difficile est gentes potentes superare.

5. Helvētīi, inopiā cibī permōtī (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Galli cōstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 8. Tuus amicus appellārī dīcitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōstituerat. 10. Caesar cōstituit cum Helvētiis, incolīs Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dicēbantur. 12. Cōsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. The soldiers desire to be praised.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

PREPARATIONS OF ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETII

187. Helvētīi auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum cōpiamque frūmentī comparāre cōstituērunt. In² tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōfirmāvērunt, et ad finitimās civitatēs Orgetorigem lēgātum misērunt. Casticus Sēquanus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amicus appellātus erat, et Dumnorix Haeduus, prīncipēs in suis (*their*) civitatibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx filiā in mātirimōnium dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs prīncipēs potentium civitātum inter sē³ iūsiūrandum dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

¹ See 186 I, 5. ² for. ³ inter sē, one another (literally, among themselves).

LESSON 31

 THE DEMONSTRATIVE *is. idem*

 188. *Is, ea, id*

As adjective, *this, that*; plur., *these, those*.

As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it*; plur., *these, those, they*.

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| NOM. | <i>is</i> | <i>ea</i> | <i>id</i> | <i>eī, iī</i> | <i>cae</i> | <i>ea</i> |
| GEN. | <i>eius</i> | <i>eius</i> | <i>eius</i> | <i>eōrum</i> | <i>eārum</i> | <i>eōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>eī</i> | <i>eī</i> | <i>eī</i> | <i>eīs, iīs</i> | <i>eīs, iīs</i> | <i>eīs, iīs</i> |
| ACC. | <i>eum</i> | <i>eam</i> | <i>id</i> | <i>eōs</i> | <i>eās</i> | <i>ea</i> |
| ABL. | <i>eō</i> | <i>eā</i> | <i>eō</i> | <i>eīs, iīs</i> | <i>eīs, iīs</i> | <i>eīs, iīs</i> |

1. In what cases do the endings differ from those of *bonus* (62)? The stem is *-e-* or *-i-*.

 189. *Idem (is + dem), the same*

| | SINGULAR | | |
|------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
| NOM. | <i>idem</i> | <i>eadem</i> | <i>idem</i> |
| GEN. | <i>eiusdem</i> | <i>eiusdem</i> | <i>eiusdem</i> |
| DAT. | <i>eīdem</i> | <i>eīdem</i> | <i>eīdem</i> |
| ACC. | <i>eundem</i> | <i>eandem</i> | <i>idem</i> |
| ABL. | <i>eōdem</i> | <i>eādem</i> | <i>eōdem</i> |
| | PLURAL | | |
| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
| NOM. | <i>eīdem (īdem)</i> | <i>eaedem</i> | <i>eadem</i> |
| GEN. | <i>eōrundem</i> | <i>eārundem</i> | <i>eōrundem</i> |
| DAT. | <i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i> | <i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i> | <i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i> |
| ACC. | <i>eōsdem</i> | <i>eāsdem</i> | <i>eadem</i> |
| ABL. | <i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i> | <i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i> | <i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i> |

1. Observe that, in **idem**, **dem** is uninflected, but **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following :

1. **Is miles laudatur**, *that soldier is praised*.
2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise that (man)*, i.e. *him*.
3. **Amicum eius laudamus**, *we praise his friend* (i.e. *the friend of him*).
4. **Amicum eorum laudamus**, *we praise their friend* (i.e. *the friend of them*).
- a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It tells in an unemphatic manner *what* man is praised. **Is** commonly refers to some one or something just mentioned, and thus often equals *the aforesaid*.
- b. In 2, 3, and 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun*.
- c. **Eius** means *his, hers, its*; **eorum** means *their*, referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their*, referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is**.
- d. Decline together: **ea fēmina, id nōmen, is miles**.
- e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is**. See also 196, c.

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

- NOM.** this, that; he, she, it.
GEN. of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its.
DAT. to *or* for this *or* that; to *or* for him, her, it.
ACC. this, that; him, her, it.
ABL. from, with, by this *or* that; from, with, by him, her, it.

PLURAL

- NOM. these, those; they.
 GEN. of these, of those; of them, their.
 DAT. to *or* for these *or* those; to *or* for them.
 ACC. these, those; them.
 ABL. from, with, by these *or* those; from, with, by them.

192.

VOCABULARY

- Labiēnus, l, m.,** *Labiennus* (one of Caesar's lieutenants). **mūrus, l, m.,** *wall.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* **permōvō, ēre, permōvī, per-**
mōtus, influence, arouse.
 (one of the subdivisions of the legion). **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus,**
place, pitch (a camp).
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, princeps, principis, m., *leader,*
chief.
dēfēnsus, defend, protect.
et . . . et, both . . . and. **pugna, ae, f.,** *battle.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.* **post, prep. with acc.,** *after, behind.*

193.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Auxilium parāre dēbēmus. 2. Militēs fortēs esse cupiunt. 3. Caesarī obsidēs dare cōstituērunt. 4. Militēs cum virtūte pugnāre iubēbit. 5. Numerus nāvium magnus esse dicitur. 6. Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers are said to be in the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eius; eārum; eī agricolae. 2. Eiusdem virī; eadem cohortēs; in eādē urbe. 3. Caesar, princeps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat. 4. Eius militēs post

eam pugnam eum ob fortūnam laudāvērunt. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar incolīs libertātem dedit, quod mūrōs magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 6. Fortūna belli nōn semper eadem est. 7. Labiēnus eāsdem cohortēs in Helvētiōs dūxit et mox eōs vicit. 8. In eōrum vicō Labiēnus castra posuit, et paucis mēnsibus multa proelia fēcit. 9. Helvētīi mūrōs eius oppidī magnā cum virtūte semper dēfendent. 10. Eōsdem militēs ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. He was influenced by their advice. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend the walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195. *qui, who, which, that, what*

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| NOM. | quī | quae | quod | quī | quae | quae |
| GEN. | cuius | cuius | cuius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. | quem | quam | quod | quōs | quās | quae |
| ABL. | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

| | |
|------|---|
| NOM. | who, which, that, what. |
| GEN. | of whom, whose, of which, of what. |
| DAT. | to <i>or</i> for whom, which, <i>or</i> what. |
| ACC. | whom, which, that, what. |
| ABL. | from, with, by whom, which, <i>or</i> what. |

196. Examine the following:

1. **Fēminae quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt**, *the women whom we see are beautiful.*
 2. **Virōs qui in castris sunt laudat**, *he praises the men that are in the camp.*
 3. **Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit**, *the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
 4. **Puella cui librum dedit fida est**, *the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
 5. **Pilum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit**, *the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
 6. **Is qui est fortis laudātur**, *he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*
- a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent*; thus the antecedent of **quās** in 1 is **fēminae**. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.
 - b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same*. The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, **quās** is accusative because it is the direct object of **vidēmus**; in 5, **quō** is ablative to express the instrument of the verb **vulnerātus sum**. Explain the cases of the other relatives.
 - c. In 6, **is** does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one*. **Is** is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative. This is, in fact, the commonest use of **is**.

197. RULE. — **Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent.*

198.

VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, case.*

causam dicō, ere, dixi, dictus,

*plead (one's) case.*vinculum, i, n., *chain.*ex vinculis, *in chains.*poena, ae, f., *punishment.*coniūratiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *an-
nounce, report.*coepi, coepisse, coepturus sum
(only in the perfect, plu-
perfect, and future perfect
tense), *began.*Orgetorix, igis, m., *Orgetorix.*

199.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum milites in eodem loco pugnabant. 2. Eidem principī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortes moenia cum virtute defendunt. 4. Et Helvetii et Romani fortes erant. 5. Eius castra in eadem urbe ponuntur. 6. Post proelium milites in hiberna contendunt.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the camp near the mountains.

200.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Romani causam coniurationis nuntiant quam Helvetii fecerunt. 2. Milites quos in Gallia habent in eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorix, qui eam coniurationem fecerat, ex vinculis causam dicere coepit. 4. Eius coniuratio ab eis qui missi erant Caesari nuntiata est. 5. Ob eam coniurationem Helvetii, quorum legati a Caesare convocati erant, permoti sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculis dicere poena est eius qui coniurationem fecit. 7. Causa belli caedes Romanorum fuit qui in ea urbe fuerunt. 8. Cum eis quorum principes id fecerant pugnare coepit.

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *hic* AND *ille*. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. *hic, haec, hoc, this, plur. these*

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| NOM. | <i>hic</i> | <i>haec</i> | <i>hoc</i> | <i>hī</i> | <i>hae</i> | <i>haec</i> |
| GEN. | <i>huius</i> | <i>huius</i> | <i>huius</i> | <i>hōrum</i> | <i>hārum</i> | <i>hōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>huic</i> | <i>huic</i> | <i>huic</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> |
| ACC. | <i>hunc</i> | <i>hanc</i> | <i>hoc</i> | <i>hōs</i> | <i>hās</i> | <i>haec</i> |
| ABL. | <i>hōc</i> | <i>hāc</i> | <i>hōc</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> |

202. *ille, illa, illud, that, plur. those*

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| NOM. | <i>ille</i> | <i>illa</i> | <i>illud</i> | <i>illī</i> | <i>illae</i> | <i>illa</i> |
| GEN. | <i>illius</i> | <i>illius</i> | <i>illius</i> | <i>illōrum</i> | <i>illārum</i> | <i>illōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>illī</i> | <i>illī</i> | <i>illī</i> | <i>illīs</i> | <i>illīs</i> | <i>illīs</i> |
| ACC. | <i>illum</i> | <i>illam</i> | <i>illud</i> | <i>illōs</i> | <i>illās</i> | <i>illa</i> |
| ABL. | <i>illō</i> | <i>illā</i> | <i>illō</i> | <i>illīs</i> | <i>illīs</i> | <i>illīs</i> |

1. Compare the endings of *ille* with those of *is* (188).

203. Examine the following :

1. **Hic** puer omnia, illa puella pauca vidit, *this boy saw everything, that girl few things.*
 2. Caesar et Pompēius erant Rōmānōrum principēs; ille in Galliā pugnābat, hic in Italiā remanēbat, *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
 3. Nostri in castris erant, *our men were in camp.*
- a. **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is** (190, a). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, **hic** means *the latter*, **ille** means *the former*. **Ille** also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*; with this meaning it is commonly placed after its noun. See also 208, 1.
- b. Decline together **haec urbs**, **hoc flūmen**.
- c. In 1 and 3, observe that the adjectives **omnia**, **pauca**, **nostri**, are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; *i.e.* **multa** (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother.</i> | cōgō, ere, cōēgi, cōactus, <i>col-</i> |
| mors, mortis, f., <i>death.</i> | <i>lect, compel, force.</i> |
| cliēs, clientis, m., <i>vassal,</i> | ēripiō, ere, ēripui, ēreptus, <i>snatch away, save.</i> |
| <i>dependent.</i> | |
| nātiō, ōnis, f., <i>nation.</i> | sub, prep. with acc., <i>to the</i> |
| ōrātiō, ōnis, f., <i>speech.</i> | <i>foot of</i> ; with abl., <i>under,</i> |
| cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvi, cōgni- | <i>at the foot of.</i> |
| tus, <i>learn of, recognize.</i> | |

205.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi quī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dixit permōtī sunt. 3. Causa eius poenae coniūrātiō quam fēcērat erat. 4. Orgetorīx, cuius cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Proelium quod cum Gallīs fēcērant longum erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius ōrātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hīc cliēns ex vinculis causam dicet. 3. Nostri hāc ōrātiōne permōtī (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae civitatēs quās diximus¹ lēgātōs ad illum ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs, illi ex urbe, hī ex agrīs, ad Caesarem contendunt. 6. Orgetorīx, princeps ille Helvētiōrum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius principis Helvētiīs nōn grāta est. 8. Illi quōs convocāvistī clientēs mei frātris sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do these things. 5. Our men collected the baggage in that place.² 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former.

¹ mention.² Accusative.

LESSON 34

Ipse. Iste. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207.

ipse, self

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| NOM. | ipse | ipsa | ipsum | ipsi | ipsae | ipsa |
| GEN. | ipsius | ipsius | ipsius | ipsorum | ipsarum | ipsorum |
| DAT. | ipsi | ipsi | ipsi | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis |
| ACC. | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | ipsos | ipsas | ipsa |
| ABL. | ipsō | ipsā | ipsō | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis |

1. Observe that **ipse** is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings **-ius** and **-i**. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?
2. **Ipse** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, **vir ipse**, *the man himself*; **fēmina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **proelium ipsum**, *the battle itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*; etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours*.

1. **Hic** is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this (of mine), this (near me), my, mine*. **Iste** points out an object near a second person directly addressed; it means *that near you, that in which you are interested*, but may be translated fully by *that of yours, your*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the

second person. **Ille** is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that (of his or hers), that . . . yonder, yonder*.

2. Mention the pronouns that have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-i** in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in **-ius** in the genitive and **-i** in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of **alter** ends in **-ius**). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (505), *other, another*.

alter, altera, alterum, *one (of two), the other (of two)*.

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both*.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two)*.

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any*.

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no, none*.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole, only*.

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all*.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*.

210. Examine the following:

1. **Nostris finibus** eōs prohibēbat, *he kept them from our territories*.
2. **Cibō** caruerat, *he had lacked food*.
3. **Ex eā parte** vici discessit, *he withdrew from that part of the village*.
- a. Observe that the ablatives **finibus**, **cibō**, and **parte** denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. RULE. — Ablative of Separation. — *Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation*

takes place. **Ab** or **ex** with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with **careō** a preposition is never used.

212.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, | ripa, ae, f., bank (of river). |
| lack, be in need of, be without. | alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other (of two). |
| discēdō, ere, discessi, disces- | alius . . . alius, one . . . an- |
| sum, depart, withdraw. | other. |
| liberō, āre, āvi, ātus, free | alii . . . alii, some . . . others. |
| (from), liberate. | alii aliam in partem, some in |
| prohibeō, ēre, prohibui, pro- | one direction, some in an- |
| hibitus, keep away from. | other. |
| prōvincia, ae, f., province. | |

213.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Clientēs hōs militēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētīi in illis castrīs ē periculō sunt ēreptī. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorigis principis illius eum cōgnōscent. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuērunt. 5. Huic militī arma pīlum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūrātiōnem fēcerant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for his courage. 4. This is the soldier by whom we were saved.

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hic liber est meus; ille gladius est militis; ubi est istud pīlum? 2. Caesar ipse cum militibus ex illā urbe

discēdit. 3. Lēgātī quōs Helvētīī mīserunt armīs carent. 4. Hostēs utrāque rīpā flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī oppidum ā militibus¹ liberāvistis. 6. Aliī in rīpīs aliī in flūmine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētiōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia ab hostibus liberāta est. 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae aliī aliam in partem discēdent. 10. Caesar et Orgetorix principēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who² was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE quis

215. audiō, *hear*

PRIN. PARTS: audiō, audire, audivī, audītus

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of audiō (519).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is *long -i-*; it is shortened, however, before another vowel. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of audiō with the corresponding forms of capiō (520). In what forms is there a difference? Note

¹ See 211.

² *Caesar was the very man who = Caesar himself.*

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel *i* in the present tense of *audiō*, and how this affects the place of the accent and so the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of *audiō* are formed and conjugated exactly like those of *capiō*.

216. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis, who? which? what?

| SINGULAR | | | |
|----------|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
| NOM. | <i>quis</i> (<i>quī</i>) | <i>quae</i> | <i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>) |
| GEN. | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> |
| DAT. | <i>cui</i> | <i>cui</i> | <i>cui</i> |
| ACC. | <i>quem</i> | <i>quam</i> | <i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>) |
| ABL. | <i>quō</i> | <i>quā</i> | <i>quō</i> |
| PLURAL | | | |
| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
| NOM. | <i>quī</i> | <i>quae</i> | <i>quae</i> |
| GEN. | <i>quōrum</i> | <i>quārum</i> | <i>quōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>quōs</i> | <i>quās</i> | <i>quae</i> |
| ABL. | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |

adjective only

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quis hoc fēcit? who did this?</i> | } Used as an interrogative pronoun. |
| 2. <i>Quid fēcisti? what did you do?</i> | |
| 3. <i>Quī (quis) vir hoc fēcit? what man did this?</i> | |
| 4. <i>Quam urbem vidēs? what city do you see?</i> | } Used as an interrogative adjective. |
| 5. <i>Quod dōnum amat puer? what gift does the boy like?</i> | |

- a. Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. *Quis* is sometimes used for *qui*.
- b. When used as a pronoun, *quis* and *quid* are used in place of *qui* and *quod*. As a pronoun it has no feminine forms in the singular.

218.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| audiō, ire, audīvi, auditus, | cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., <i>custom,</i> |
| <i>hear.</i> | <i>habit.</i> |
| mūniō, ire, mūnīvi, mūnitus, | clāmor, ōris, m., <i>shout, cry.</i> |
| <i>fortify.</i> | labor, ōris, m., <i>work, labor.</i> |
| veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, ¹ | iūdicium, i, n., <i>trial, judg-</i> |
| pūniō, ire, pūnīvi, pūnitus, | <i>ment.</i> |
| <i>punish.</i> | undique, adv., <i>from all sides.</i> |

219.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem periculō liberābit. 2. Iste miles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūratiō est facta. 4. Helvētiī ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīris; audiētur; vērērātis. 2. Mūniēbātur; pūnivisti; pūnitae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

¹ See page 49, footnote.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs misimus audiuntur. 5. Cōnsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quis tēlis vulnerātus est? Miles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdiciū undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant audītī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one¹ who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that² we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

221. Ea cōnsilia sunt Helvētiis per nūntiōs nūntiāta, et Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Coniūrātiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī³ eius poena fuit. Quam⁴ ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdiciū omnem suam (*his*) familiam et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

¹ See page 107, footnote 2. ² Is this a relative or a demonstrative? ³ See 183, 2. ⁴ *quam ob rem, therefore, wherefore.*

ē periculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs¹ per eius fugam incitāti sunt multitudinemque hominum ex agris cōgere coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorix mortuus² est, et dē eius morte multi rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs fuērunt.

(READING SELECTION 452)

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222.

THE STEM ENDS IN -ū-

cāsus, m.,
chance, misfortune

cornū, n.,
horn, wing

Stem cāsu-

Stem cornu-

Base cās-

Base corn-

| | SINGULAR | SINGULAR | CASE ENDINGS | |
|------|-----------|----------|------------------|---------------|
| | | | SINGULAR | |
| | | | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
| NOM. | cāsus | cornū | -us | -ū |
| GEN. | cāsūs | cornūs | -ūs | -ūs |
| DAT. | cāsui (ū) | cornū | -ui (ū) | -ū |
| ACC. | cāsum | cornū | -um | -ū |
| ABL. | cāsū | cornū | -ū | -ū |
| | PLURAL | PLURAL | PLURAL | |
| NOM. | cāsūs | cornua | -ūs | -ua |
| GEN. | cāsuum | cornuum | -uum | -uum |
| DAT. | cāsibus | cornibus | -ibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | cāsūs | cornua | -ūs | -ua |
| ABL. | cāsibus | cornibus | -ibus | -ibus |

1. A few words of this declension have -ubus in the dative and ablative plural.
2. *Domus*, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 501.)

¹ *officers, magistrates*, nom. plur. ² *mortuus est, died.*

223. RULE. — Gender. — *Nearly all nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.*

1. Domus, house, Īdūs (plur.), the Ides, manus, hand, and a few other nouns are feminine.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis, brave army ; tua manus, your hand ; cornū dextrum, right wing.**

225.

VOCABULARY

cāsus, ūs, m., a falling, in (ā) dextrō cornū, on the chance, misfortune. right wing.

domus, ūs, f., house, home. in (ā) sinistrō cornū, on the left wing.

exercitus, ūs, m., army.

manus, ūs, f., hand, band (of men). conveniō, ire, convēni, conventum, come together, assemble.

portus, ūs, m., harbor.

cornū, ūs, n., horn, wing (of army). deus, i, m., god.



Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)

226.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs militum audivit? 2. Hostēs alii aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Principis est cōsuētūdō eōs quī coniūratiōnem faciunt pūnīre. 5. Quam urbem mūnient et quī eam dēfēndent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illi pūnītī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that¹ Caesar has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercituī; manuum. 2. Manūs equitum ad exercitum vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portum nāvēs hostium missae sunt. 4. Quī milītēs in dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī quī ad Caesarem vēnerant eī cāsū exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbis conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī in sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dimicāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitibus vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfēdimus magnum portum habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the houses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which² the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

¹ Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? ² *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

228. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27:

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| dūcō ³ | audiō ⁴ | iaciō ¹ | coepī ⁴ |
| trādūcō ³ | permovēō ² | fugiō | nūntiō ⁴ |
| veniō ⁴ | pōnō ³ | faciō ² | ēripiō ⁴ |
| conveniō ⁴ | careō ² | interficiō ² | cōgō ⁴ |
| mittō ³ | vincō ³ | dicō | cōgnōscō |
| dēbeō ² | relinquō ⁴ | iubeō ⁴ | discēdō ³ |
| cupiō ³ | contencō ³ | appellō | liberō |
| capiō ³ | gerō | cōstituō | pūniō ⁴ |
| prohibeō ² | incolō | dēfendō | mūniō |

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes **trāns** and **con**, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether **cupiō** belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

229. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the first person, **interficiō** in the second person, **mūniō** in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of **dō**,

iubeō, cōgnōscō, veniō. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

230. Examine the following:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Miles gladium habet, | } <i>the soldier has a sword.</i> |
| 2. Militi est gladius. | |

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of *est*. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

231. RULE. — **Dative of Possession.** — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

232.

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

I. 1. Facient; convocābāmur; cōgēmini. 2. Audiēbāris; capiēris; caperis. 3. Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis. 4. Missum erat; miserat; coepisti. 5. Pōnētis; capiēs; appellābitis. 6. Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur. 7. Reliquerātis; relinquent; dictum erat. 8. Liberātae sunt; habuerās; contendēbātis. 9. Ēripiēris; trādūcētur; monentur. 10. Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; pūniris; cōgitur.

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall conquer; they have conquered; you were conquering. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

233.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Meus amicus domum habet.* 2. *Meō amicō est domus.* 3. *Helvētīī, quōrum castra vidētis, ad moenia oppidi mox venient.* 4. *Exercitus magnus Caesarī fuit.* 5. *Caesar magnum exercitum habuit.* 6. *Magnam frūmenti cōpiam habent.* 7. *Magna frūmenti cōpia eīs est.* 8. *Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent.* 9. *Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs.* 10. *Militī pulchrum gladium dedit.*

II. 1. The farmer has¹ a horse. 2. They have¹ friends. 3. The soldiers will besiege Rome. 4. He had¹ a book. 5. Who has come to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

LESSON 39

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER

234.

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*, *go*

PRIN. PARTS: *eō*, *ire*, *ii*, *itum*²

Learn all tenses of the indicative of *eō* (525).

1. Notice that the -i-, the present stem of *eō*, changes to -e- before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?

¹ Express this idea in two ways in Latin.

² See page 49, footnote.

2. Observe that the future indicative *ibō* is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is *ire*. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

235. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns:

SINGULAR PLURAL

| | | | |
|-------------------|-------|-------|--|
| First Declension | -ae | -is | { <i>Rōmae</i> , in Rome. <i>Athēnis</i> , in Athens. |
| Second Declension | -i | -is | { <i>Corinthi</i> , at or in Corinth. <i>Delphis</i> , at or in Delphi. |
| Third Declension | -i(e) | -ibus | { <i>Carthāgini</i> , at or in Carthage. <i>Trallibus</i> , at or in Tralles. |

2. *Domī*, at home; *humī*, on the ground; *rūrī*, in the country, are also locative forms.
3. To express the idea of *at* or *in* for other words than the names of towns use the preposition *in* and the ablative; *i.e.*, in *urbe est*, he is in the city; in *Italiā sunt*, they are in Italy.

236. Examine the following:

1. *Venit*, he comes { *ad pontem*, to the bridge.
in Italiā, to or into Italy.
Rōmam, to Rome.
domum, home.
rūs, to or into the country.

2. Exit, he goes

{ (ab) (dē) ex oppidō, *from the town.*
 { (ab) (dē) ex Italiā, *from Italy.*
 { Athēnis, *from Athens.*
 { domō, *from home.*
 { rūre, *from the country.*

- a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*, while a preposition (*in, ad, ab, dē, ex*) is used with other words.

237. RULE. — Expressions of Place.

1. Place *Where*. Ablative with *in*.

But, Locative with names of towns, *domus, humus,* and *rūs*.

2. Place *To which*. Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But, Accusative without a preposition with names of towns, *domus, humus,* and *rūs*.

3. Place *From which*. Ablative with *ab, dē,* or *ex*.

But, Ablative without a preposition with names of towns, *domus, humus,* and *rūs*.

238.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum (plur.), f.,

Athens.

Carthāgō, inis, f., *Carthage.*

Corinthus, i, f. (28, 2), *Corinth.*

Delphī, ōrum (plur.), m., *Delphi.*

equitātus (eques), ūs, m., *cavalry.*

eō, ire, īi, itum, *go.*

exeō (ex + eō), ire, exil, ex-

itūrus, *go forth, leave.*

trānseō (trāns + eō), ire,

trānsii, trānsitūrus, *go over, go across, cross.*

impetus, ūs, m., *attack.*

impetum faciō in (with acc.), *make an attack upon.*

239.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfendentur.
 2. Legiōnēs populi Rōmāni in hiberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus
 nāvium militibus, quī in hibernīs erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In
 sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt multae manūs fortium militum.
 5. Propter cāsum nostrōrum hostēs laetī erant.

II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right
 wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are as-
 sembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the
 harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen.
 4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

240.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ierat; ibunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exhibātis;
 imus; iimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā¹; Rōmā; domō.
 4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāginī; Athēnīs; domī. 5. Cōn-
 sul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs
 quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsire iussit. 7. Dux Rō-
 mānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus liberābit.
 8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnīs bellum
 geret. 9. Helvētīi ē finibus exire parant, et exercitum
 flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum
 in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

II. 1. From Greece; out of Corinth; from home. 2. To
 Athens; to the city; into the country; into the province.
 3. In Rome; in Italy; at home; at Delphi. 4. We ought
 to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made
 an attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The
 cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from
 the banks by the enemy.

¹ of Rome. Rōmā is in apposition with urbe.

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (510), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------|------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| NOM. | ūnus, one | ūna | ūnum | trēs, three | tria |
| GEN. | ūnius | ūnius | ūnius | trium | trium |
| DAT. | ūni | ūni | ūni | tribus | tribus |
| ACC. | ūnum | ūnam | ūnum | trēs, trīs | tria |
| ABL. | ūnō | ūnā | ūnō | tribus | tribus |

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| NOM. | duo, two | duae | duo |
| GEN. | duōrum | duārum | duōrum |
| DAT. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus |
| ACC. | duōs, duo | duās | duo |
| ABL. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus |

SINGULAR

PLURAL

| | | |
|------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| NOM. | mille, thousand | millia (mīlia) |
| GEN. | mille | millium (mīlium) |
| DAT. | mille | millibus (mīlibus) |
| ACC. | mille | millia (mīlia) |
| ABL. | mille | millibus (mīlibus) |

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae, four girls**; **septem puērōrum, of seven boys**.

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mille** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally used as an adjective: **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem millia militum**, *seven thousands of soldiers, seven thousand soldiers*.

244. Examine the following:

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Italiā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy*.
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quinque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep*.
- a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **quinque pedēs**, extent of *space*.

245. RULE. — **Extent of Time and Space.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

246.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| altitūdō, altitūdinis, f. , <i>height, depth.</i> | mercātor, ōris, m. , <i>merchant, trader.</i> |
| ēruptiō, ōnis, f. , <i>a breaking out, a sally.</i> | socius, i, m. , <i>companion, ally.</i> |
| incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus , <i>set fire to, burn.</i> | passus, ūs, m. , <i>pace.</i> |
| maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus , <i>stay, remain.</i> | mille passūs , <i>a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile;</i> |
| | millia passuum , <i>miles.</i> |
| | hōra, ae, f. , <i>hour.</i> |

247.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Centum viginti mercātorum; mille trecentis sex et quadrāgintā militibus.** 2. **Trium exercituum; duābus legiōnibus; quattuor equōrum.** 3. **Mūrus quem vidēs sex pedēs altus est.** 4. **Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant.** 5. **Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat.** 6. **Equitēs duās hōrās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant.** 7. **Socii**

Helvētiōrum decem millia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vicōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria millia militum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfectī erant. 10. Id flūmen centum pedēs lātum et duodēvigintī altum fuit. 11. Hīc collis septuāgintā quinque pedēs altus est. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet high, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and hastened to Rome. 5. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

248.

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in -ē-

diēs, m., *day*

rēs, f., *thing*

Stem **diē-**

Stem **rē-**

Base **di-**

Base **r-**

| | CASE ENDINGS | | | CASE ENDINGS | |
|------|--------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|--------------|------------------|
| | SING. | PLUR. | | SING. | PLUR. |
| NOM. | diēs | diēs | rēs | rēs | -ēs -ēs |
| GEN. | diēi ¹ | diērum | rei ¹ | rērum | -ēi -ērum |
| DAT. | diēi | diēbus | rei | rēbus | -ēi -ēbus |
| ACC. | diem | diēs | rem | rēs | -em -ēs |
| ABL. | diē | diēbus | rē | rēbus | -ē -ēbus |

¹ In the genitive singular the case ending is -ēi if the base ends in a vowel, -ei if the base ends in a consonant.

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. RULE. — **Gender.** — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following :

1. **Satis cibi habēmus**, *we have enough (of) food.*
 2. **Nihil novi est**, *there is nothing (of) new (newness, novelty).*
 3. **Unus ex militibus vulnerātus est**, *one of the soldiers was wounded.*
 4. **Quidam dē nostris cecidērunt**, *some of our men fell.*
- a. Observe that the genitives **cibi**, **novi**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is or is not taken. Note that in 1 and 2 *of* is not used in English.
- b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quidam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. RULE. — **Genitive of the Whole** ("Partitive Genitive") — *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends.*

252.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| aciēs , ēī, f., <i>line of battle.</i> | nihil reliquī , <i>nothing left.</i> |
| diēs , ēī, m., <i>day.</i> | cōficiō , ere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, <i>accomplish, finish, wear out.</i> |
| rēs , rei, f., <i>thing, circumstance, affair.</i> | pūblicus , a, um, <i>public.</i> |
| nihil (indecl. noun), <i>nothing.</i> | rēs pūblica , rei pūblicae, f., <i>the state, the commonwealth.</i> |
| satis (indecl. noun), <i>enough.</i> | |

253.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī mīllia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētīi cum omnibus impedīmentīs domum ire coāctī sunt. 5. Equitātus quīndecim hōris Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched¹ seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Hēlvētiīs, quī flūmen trānsībant, pugnābat. 4. Vicōs et aedificia incenderant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Primā lūce paucī dē eōrum mīlitibus iter nōn cōnfēcērant. 6. Fīnitīmī eis satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diēbus magnō perīculō liberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātīs eō diē eandem rem Caesari nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Hēlvētiōs, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Primam aciem iacere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have² nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

¹ iter faciō.
habent.

² Express this idea in some other way than by using

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 476.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi ē finibus suis¹ exīre cōstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua¹ omnia ad² duodecim, vicōs ad² quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.³ Itaque et domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt⁴ et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque⁵ domō efferre iubent.³ Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrigī finitimī idem facere et ē finibus exīre cōstituunt.³ Bōiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīci et sociī erant.

(READING SELECTION 454)

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are: *positive, comparative, superlative*.

I. The positive is the simple form of the adjective: *cārus, dear*.

¹ *their*. ² *about* (with numerals). ³ The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. ⁴ From *tollō*. ⁵ Acc. of *quisque*.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, *-ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter: *cārus* (base *cār-*), *dear*, *cārior*, *cārius*, *dearer*.
3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*: *cārus* (base *cār-*), *dear*, *cāriissimus*, *a, um*, *dearest*.

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|---|
| | <i>M. and F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | |
| <i>lātus</i> , <i>a, um</i> (<i>lāt-</i>), <i>wide</i> | <i>lātior</i> , | <i>lātius</i> , | <i>lātissimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> , <i>widest</i> |
| <i>fortis</i> , <i>e</i> (<i>fort-</i>), <i>brave</i> | <i>fortior</i> , | <i>fortius</i> , | <i>fortissimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> , <i>bravest</i> |
| <i>vēlōx</i> (<i>vēlōc-</i>), <i>swift</i> | <i>vēlōcior</i> , | <i>vēlōcius</i> , | <i>vēlōcissimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> , <i>swiftest</i> |

257. The superlative is declined like *bonus* (62). The comparative is declined as follows:

| | SINGULAR | | PLURAL | |
|------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| | <i>M. and F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M. and F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| NOM. | <i>lātior</i> | <i>lātius</i> | <i>lātiōrēs</i> | <i>lātiōra</i> |
| GEN. | <i>lātiōris</i> | <i>lātiōris</i> | <i>lātiōrum</i> | <i>lātiōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>lātiōri</i> | <i>lātiōri</i> | <i>lātiōribus</i> | <i>lātiōribus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>lātiōrem</i> | <i>lātius</i> | <i>lātiōrēs</i> (<i>is</i>) | <i>lātiōra</i> |
| ABL. | <i>lātiōre</i> | <i>lātiōre</i> | <i>lātiōribus</i> | <i>lātiōribus</i> |

- c. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare *altus* (*alt-*), *high*, *deep*; *potēns* (*potent-*), *powerful*; *brevis* (*brev-*), *short*. Decline in the comparative.

259. Examine the following :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hic mōns altior quam ille est, | } <i>this mountain is higher</i> |
| 2. Hic mōns altior illō est, | |
| 3. Montem altiōrem quam illum videō, | } <i>I see a mountain</i> |
| 4. Montem altiōrem illō videō, | |

Observe that in 1 **quam** is used and **ille** is nominative, while in 2 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative. So in 3 **quam** is used and **illum** is accusative, while in 4 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative.

The omission of **quam** is commonest in negative sentences and in relative clauses. Thus, *vir quō nēmō fortior erat, a man than whom none was (ever) braver.*

260. RULE.¹—Ablative of Comparison.—After comparatives with **quam** the same case is used after **quam** as before it. After comparatives without **quam** the ablative is used.

261.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| vēlōx, vēlōcis, <i>swift.</i> | lātītūdō, inis, f., <i>width,</i> |
| tūtus, a, um, <i>safe.</i> | <i>breadth.</i> |
| turpis, e, <i>ugly, disgraceful,</i> | perveniō, ire, pervēni, per- |
| <i>infamous.</i> | ventum, <i>come up, arrive,</i> |
| Rhodanus, i, m., <i>the Rhone.</i> | <i>reach.</i> |
| quam, adv., <i>than.</i> | obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus, |
| latus, ¹ lateris, n., <i>side, flank.</i> | <i>besiege.</i> |

262.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare oppugnātum erat.
 2. Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs labōrābunt. 3. Incolās quī ex oppidō exiērunt laudat. 4. Quī clāmōribus Gallōrum terrentur? 5. Tempus anni bellō nōn erat idōneum. 6. Ille mōns mille pedēs altus est.

¹ Do not confuse with the adjective **lātus**, a, um.

II. 1. On that day Caesar left Rome. 2. That day was the end of the war. 3. He left the city and hastened into Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi finitimis fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius quam Rhodanus est. 3. Rōmānī multis rēbus potentiōrēs illis gentibus erant. 4. Equōs vēlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vidimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad finēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus quīngentōs pedēs lātum est. 9. Vēlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vidī. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātissima erat.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus*, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pulcher (pulchr-), <i>beautiful</i> [<i>eager</i> | pulchrior, pulchr- <i>ius</i> | pulcherrimus, a, <i>um</i> |
| ācer (acr-), <i>keen</i> , | ācrior, ācrius | ācerrimus, a, <i>um</i> |

265. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus, a, um** to the base. The comparative is regular.

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|------------------|----------------------|
| similis, e (simil-), <i>like</i> | similior, ius | simillimus, a, um |
| dissimilis, e (dissimil-), <i>unlike</i> | dissimilior, ius | dissimilimus, a, um |
| facilis, e (facil-), <i>easy</i> | facilior, ius | facillimus, a, um |
| difficilis, e (difficil-), <i>hard</i> | difficilior, ius | difficillimus, a, um |
| gracilis, e (gracil-), <i>slender</i> | gracilior, ius | gracillimus, a, um |
| humilis, e (humil-), <i>low</i> | humilior, ius | humillimus, a, um |

266. Examine the following :

- Hic mōns centum pedibus altior quam ille est,** *this mountain is a hundred feet higher* (literally, *higher by a hundred feet*) *than that.*
- Hoc iter multō facilius illō est,** *this road is much easier* (literally, *easier by much*) *than that.*

Observe that the ablatives **centum pedibus** and **multō** express the *measure of difference* between the objects compared.

267. RULE. — Measure of Difference. — *The Measure of Difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. *Hic mōns altissimus est, this mountain is very (or exceedingly) high.*
2. *Hic mōns altior est, this mountain is rather (or too) high.*

269.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| adventus, ūs, m., <i>approach, arrival.</i> | animus, i, m., <i>mind, courage, spirit, disposition.</i> |
| lēnis, e, <i>smooth, gentle.</i> | inter, prep. with acc., <i>between, among, during.</i> |
| exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>await, wait for, expect.</i> | certiōrem eum faciō, with dē <i>and abl., I inform him (lit., I make him more certain) of.</i> |
| ibi, adv., <i>in that place, there.</i> | |

270.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar in Galliā multās legiōnēs habuit. 2. Quod cōnsilium tūtius hōc est? 3. Nāvēs quibus militēs missi erant vėlōcissimae sunt. 4. Helvētiī finitimōs multōs annōs finibus prohibuerant. 5. Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.

II. 1. There are not enough horsemen in Rome. 2. Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul. 3. Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days. 4. Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.

271.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impetum hostium exspectāre difficillimum est. 2. Rīpae huius flūminis lēniōrēs sunt. 3. Lēgātus multō fortior meō frātre est. 4. Pōns intēr duo oppida factus erat. 5. Omnium urbis viārum haec multō brevissima est. 6. Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt. 7. Iter inter altōs montēs angustum et difficillimum erat. 8. Collis in quō Rōmānī castra posuerant centum pedibus altior illō est quī ad vicum est. 9. Dē cāsū exercitūs

lĕgātōs certiorēs fēcīt. 10. Quī eōs certiorēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There¹ was there an exceedingly high mountain. 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects² is rather like³ Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Possum

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| bonus, a, um, <i>good</i> | melior, melius | optimus, a, um |
| malus, a, um, <i>bad</i> | peior, peius | pessimus, a, um |
| magnus, a, um, <i>great</i> | maior, maius | maximus, a, um |
| parvus, a, um, <i>small</i> | minor, minus | minimus, a, um |
| multus, a, um, <i>much</i> | — plūs | plūrimus, a, um |
| multi, ae, a, <i>many</i> | plūrēs, plūra | plūrimī, ae, a |
| vetus, veteris, <i>old</i> | vetustior, vetustius | veterrimus, a, um |
| senex, senis, <i>old</i> (501) | senior (maior nātū) | maximus nātū |
| iuuenis, e, <i>young</i> | iūnior (minor nātū) | minimus nātū |
| superus, a, um, <i>above</i> | superior, superius, <i>higher</i> | suprēmus, summus, <i>highest</i> |
| inferus, a, um, <i>below</i> | inferior, inferius, <i>lower</i> | infimus, imus, <i>lowest</i> |

¹ See note on 49, II. 3. ² rēs. ³ See 163.

273. **Plūs, more**, is not declined like other comparatives (257). Wherein is the difference?

| SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | |
|----------|----------------|--------|----------------|----------|
| | Masc. and Fem. | Neut. | Masc. and Fem. | Neut. |
| NOM. | — | plūs | plūrēs | plūra |
| GEN. | — | plūris | plūrium | plūrium |
| DAT. | — | — | plūribus | plūribus |
| ACC. | — | plūs | plūrēs, is | plūra |
| ABL. | — | — | plūribus | plūribus |

274. **Possum** (pot(is) + sum), *I am able, I can.*

PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse, potui, —**

Learn all tenses of the indicative (522).

Observe

1. That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
2. That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (521).

275.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| fidēs, ei, f., trust, confidence. | accēdō, ere, accessi, accessū- |
| potestās, ātis, f. (possum), | rus (with ad and the acc.), |
| power, authority. | go or come near, approach. |
| nōbilis, e, well known, noble. | hūc, adv., to this place, hither. |
| amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample. | quam maximus, the greatest |
| permittō, ere, permisi, permis- | possible, as large as pos- |
| sus, give up, intrust, permit. | sible (with superlatives |
| | quam has the force "as possible"). |

276.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficiliter iter facere coēgit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallōs dē eius cōnsiliis certiōrēs fēcērunt. 4. Paucī dē nostris ad flūmen lātissimum pervēnerant. 5. Urbs cuius moenia obsēdimus lātior mille passibus illō oppidō est.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall. 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days. 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech. 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximis itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accēdere ad vīcum, quī summō¹ in monte positus est, nōn possunt. 4. Omnia in fidem² et potestatem populī Rōmānī illae nātiōnēs permiserunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbilissimōs civitātis mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme facta sunt. 7. Legiōnem summum collem mūnīre iubet. 8. Helvētīi ob flūmina maxima trānsire in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annis maior nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house. 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant. 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

¹ on the highest part of, on the top of. Certain other adjectives also may be used to denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant, as *īmus*, the lowest part of, the bottom of; *medius*, the middle of; *extrēmus*, the end of.

² keeping, protection.

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings:

| | | | |
|---------|-----------|---------|---------|
| turpis | pessimus | ācrior | minimus |
| asper | tūtior | īmus | superus |
| amplus | vēlōx | similis | plūrēs |
| nōbilis | vetustior | maior | senior |

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding -ē to the base.

| ADJECTIVE | BASE | ADVERB |
|---------------------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| cārus, <i>dear</i> | cār- | cārē, <i>dearly</i> |
| pulcher, <i>beautiful</i> | pulchr- | pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> |
| miser, <i>wretched</i> | miser- | miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> |

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding -ter to the stem. Stems ending in -nt drop -t.

| ADJECTIVE | STEM | ADVERB |
|----------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| fortis, <i>brave</i> | forti- | fortiter, <i>bravely</i> |
| prūdēns, <i>wise</i> | prudent- | prūdentē, <i>wisely</i> |

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular*, in others the *neuter accusative singular*, serves as an adverb:

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| primus, <i>first</i> | primō, <i>at first</i> |
| multus, <i>much</i> | multum, <i>much</i> |
| facilis, <i>easy</i> | facile, <i>easily</i> |

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the

superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē* (note one exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

| ADJECTIVE | ADVERB | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-----------|-----------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| cārus | cārē, <i>dearly</i> | cārius | cārissimē |
| pulcher | pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> | pulchrius | pulcherrimē |
| bonus | bene, <i>well</i> | melius | optimē |
| facilis | facile, <i>easily</i> | facilius | facillimē |
| ācer | ācriter, <i>cagerly</i> | ācrius | ācerrimē |
| multus | multum, <i>much</i> | plūs | plūrimum |
| magnus | magnopere, <i>greatly</i> | magis | maximē |

Form and compare the adverbs of these adjectives in 278: turpis, amplus, nōbilis, pessimus, vēlōx, plūrēs.

281.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, <i>drive, lead, do.</i> | agmen, agminis, n. (agō), <i>army (on the march), column; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.</i> |
| instruō, ere, instrūxi, instrūctus, <i>draw up, form, arrange.</i> | |
| administrō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>manage, direct, administer.</i> | proximus, a, um, <i>nearest, next (163).</i> |
| plūrimum possum, <i>I am very powerful, have most influence.</i> | apud, prep. with acc., <i>among, with, near.</i> |
| | quārtus, a, um, <i>fourth.</i> |

282.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx plūrimum poterat.
2. Rēs ab imperātōre optimē administrābantur.
3. Helvētiī multō ācrius quam fīnitimī cum hostibus contendēbant.
4. Caesar aciem summō in colle instrūxit et impetum exspectāvit.
5. Vicus ad quem primum agmen pervēnerat

proximus erat finibus Gallōrum. 6. Omnia quae lēgātus iusserat militēs bene ēgērunt. 7. Ubi¹ Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervēnit, ācerrimē cum hostibus equitēs pugnābant. 8. Summus collis ā peditibus nostrīs occupātus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetorigis filiam et ūnum ē filiīs nostrī cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. 10. Nostrī quam fortissimē pugnāvērunt, sed expugnāre oppidum nōn potuērunt. 11. Nostrī socii apud finitimōs ob amicitiam populi Rōmāni plūrimū possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there² on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long³ marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.⁴ 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

¹ *when.*² *eo* (adv.).³ *magnus.*⁴ See 147, 3.*Agmen*

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

THE TWO ROUTES BY WHICH THE HELVETII COULD
LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

283. Duōbus itineribus Helvētīi domō¹ exīre potuērunt. Ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque² vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximūque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem Helvētīi comparāvērunt et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (511): **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **suī**, *of himself, herself, itself*.

285. USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

- I. The pronoun of the first person is **ego**, *I*; of the second person **tū**, *you*; of the third person **is**, **ea**, **id**, *he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.
 - a. **Tē vocō**, *I'm calling you*. ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore **ego** is not used.)
 - b. **Ego tē vocō**, *I (emphatic) am calling you*. (Such emphasis

¹ Why is there no preposition? See 237, 3. ² *I.e.* the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation, "It is I who am calling you.")

c. *Ego eum laudō*; *is mē culpat*, *I praise him*; *he blames me*.

It will be recalled that in the exercises of the preceding lessons the subjects of the verbs, when pronouns, were not expressed. Why is it impossible to omit the personal pronouns as subjects in English as often as in Latin?

286.

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it stands (see also 428). It is never in the nominative case and so is never subject.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. I praise <i>myself</i> | PL. We praise <i>ourselves</i> |
| 2. You praise <i>yourself</i> | You praise <i>yourselves</i> |
| 3. { He praises <i>himself</i> } | They praise <i>themselves</i> |
| { She praises <i>herself</i> } | |

2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, *ego* and *tū* (except in the nominative case), are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, *suī*, of *himself*, *herself*, *itself*.

| | |
|--|--|
| S. 1. <i>mē laudō</i> , <i>I praise myself</i> | PL. <i>nōs laudāmus</i> , <i>we praise ourselves</i> |
| 2. <i>tē laudās</i> , <i>you praise yourself</i> | <i>vōs laudātis</i> , <i>you praise yourselves</i> |
| 3. <i>sē laudat</i> , <i>he praises himself</i> | <i>sē laudant</i> , <i>they praise themselves</i> |

3. Review 190. Do not confuse *is* with *suī*. *Suī* regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands.

- a. *Vir sē videt, the man sees himself.*
- b. *Vir eum videt, the man sees him (some one else).*
4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse *ipse* with *sē*. *Ipse* is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs. It may be used in any case.
- a. *Vir ipse eum vidit, the man himself saw him, or the man saw him himself.*
- b. *Vir sē vidit, the man saw himself.*
- c. *Virum ipsum vidimus, we saw the man himself.*

287. The preposition *cum* with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them; *tēcum*, instead of *cum tē*; *nōbiscum*, instead of *cum nōbis*. So also *quibuscum*, *with whom*, instead of *cum quibus*.

288. Examine the following :

1. *Ego, qui haec faciō, tuus pater sum, I, who do this, am your father.*
2. *Vōs, qui haec facitis, mei amici estis, you, who do this, are my friends.*

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus,</i> | <i>commeātus, ūs, m., provisions,</i> |
| <i>give up, surrender.</i> | <i>supplies.</i> |
| <i>committō, ere, commisi, com-</i> | <i>spēs, ei, f., hope.</i> |
| <i>missus, intrust, commit;</i> | <i>sine, prep. with abl., without.</i> |
| <i>proelium committō, begin</i> | <i>ante, adv., and prep. with</i> |
| <i>battle.</i> | <i>acc., before.</i> |
| <i>recipiō. ere, recēpi, receptus,</i> | <i>postea, adv., afterwards.</i> |
| <i>take back, receive; sē recl-</i> | <i>autem, conj. (never the first</i> |
| <i>pere, retreat, betake one's self.</i> | <i>word), but, however.</i> |

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. mē recipiō, I retreat | nōs recipimus, we retreat |
| 2. tē recipis, you retreat | vōs recipitis, you retreat |
| 3. sē recipit, he retreats | sē recipiunt, they retreat |

290.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis rei publicae spēs in militum virtūte posita¹ est. 2. Brevi tempore quattuor ē principibus Rōmam mittentur. 3. Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō. 4. Haec rēs hostibus nūtiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostrīs summō in colle vidēbātur.

II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine vōbīs miserrimī erimus. 2. Ego sum mīles, tū es nauta. 3. Nōbīs est satis cibī. 4. Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 5. Magnā cum celeritāte in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus. 6. Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō. 7. Ubi Gallī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnēs ad² sē convocārī iubet. 9. Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt. 10. Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis. 11. Quis tēcum Athēnās ibit?

II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

¹ depends. ² before.

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

| | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|----------|--|---|
| 1ST PER. | meus, ¹ a, um, <i>my,</i> <i>mine</i> | noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i> |
| 2D PER. | tuus, a, um, <i>your,</i> <i>yours</i> | vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> |
| 3D PER. | suus, a, um, <i>his (own),</i> <i>her (own), its (own)</i> | suus, a, um, <i>their (own),</i> <i>their</i> |

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun *to which they belong*, and not *with the noun to which they refer*. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.
 - a. **Suum patrem puella vidit,** *the girl saw her father.*
 - b. **Vestrum amicum vidimus,** *we saw your (plur.) friend.*
 - c. **Tuas filiās vidit,** *he saw your (sing.) daughters.*
2. **Suus, a, um,** is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of **is, eius, his, her, its; eorum, their; eorum, their** (referring to feminine).
 - a. **Agricola suum equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (i.e. his own) horse.*
 - b. **Agricola eius equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (some one else's, not the farmer's) horse.*
 - c. **Agricola eorum equos laudat,** *the farmer praises their horses.*
 - d. **Agricolae suos equos laudant,** *the farmers praise their (their own) horses.*

¹ The vocative singular is **mi**.

294. Examine the following :

1. **Magnō ūsui nostris fuit**, *it was a great help to our men* (literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).
2. **Tertiā aciem nostris subsidiō misit**, *he sent the third line as a relief* (literally, *for a relief*) *to our men*.

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsui** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. This use of the dative is called the *dative of service* or *purpose*.

295. RULE. — **Dative of Service or Purpose.** — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it.*

296.

SUMMARY

| | PERSONAL PRONOUNS | REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS | POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|---|
| FIRST PERSON | ego | meī ¹ | meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i> noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i> |
| SECOND PERSON | tū | tui ¹ | tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i> (sing.) vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (plur.) |
| THIRD PERSON | is, ea, id | sui ¹ | suus, a, um, <i>his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own</i> (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of is, ea, id. |

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns?

297.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus, <i>go back, return.</i> | opus, operis, n., <i>work, labor.</i> |
| dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus, <i>send off, dismiss, let go.</i> | tamen, adv., <i>yet, however,</i> <i>nevertheless.</i> |
| reddō, ere, reddidi, redditus, <i>give back, return, render.</i> | itaque, conj., <i>and so, there-</i> <i>fore.</i> |
| sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sus- tentus, hold up, withstand, <i>sustain.</i> | inde, adv., <i>thence, thereupon.</i> ūsus, ūs, m., <i>use, advantage,</i> <i>benefit.</i> |

298.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi difficile est. 2. Postea in silvas sese recēperunt. 3. Nōs dē proeliō certiōrēs faciet. 4. Caesar eōs sibi arma dēdere cōgit. 5. Militēs sē laudābant, eōs autem culpābant. 6. Nōbīs Rōmae satis cibī est.

II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

299.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar equitātum auxiliō suis misit. 2. Tuī amīcī tibi, mei mihi sunt cārissimī. 3. Labiēnus ūnum latus castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Haec rēs nostrīs magnō ūsui erat. 5. Impetum sustinēre nōn poterant; itaque in suōs finēs rediērunt. 6. Hostēs Caesarī sē sua- que omnia dēdidērunt. 7. Propter operis magnitudinem flūmen trānsire Helvētiī nōn potuērunt. 8. Caesar eius militēs dīmisit, suōs autem in castrīs tenuit. 9. Cōsul in finēs Helvētiōrum quam maximīs itineribus contendere cō- stituit. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs adventum suum exspectāre iussit

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to return all his possessions¹ to him. 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings (see 515):

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

| MASCULINE | FEMININE | NEUTER |
|-----------------|----------------|--|
| quis | qua | quid (quod), somebody, anybody |
| aliquis | aliqua | aliquid (aliquod), some one |
| quisquam | | quicquam, any one (at all) (no plur.) |
| quidam | quaedam | quoddam, quiddam, a certain one |
| quisque | quaeque | quidque, quodque, each one, every one |

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**.
3. In the neuter the **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, the **quod**-forms as adjectives.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **Quis**, *some one, any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**: **si quid his accidit**, *if anything happens to them*.

¹ Express by the neuter plural of the proper possessive adjective.

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all, every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences: **nec quisquam hoc facit**, *and nobody does this*.
4. **Aliquis**, *some one or other, some one*, denotes some one whose identity is unknown: **aliquis tibi haec dixit**, *some one (I do not know who) told you this*.
5. **Quidam** denotes some one whose identity is known but is not fully revealed: **quidam haec mihi dixit**, *some one (I know who, but I will not tell) told me this*.

302. Examine the following:

1. **Vir summae virtutis fuit**, } *he was a man of very great*
2. **Vir summā virtute fuit**, } *courage.*

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtutis** and the ablative phrase **summā virtute** describe the noun **vir**; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtutis** and **virtute**.

303. RULE. — **Descriptive Genitive and Ablative.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun, if itself modified by an adjective or genitive, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.*

304.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| diligentia, ae, f., <i>carefulness, diligence, industry.</i> | aliēnus, a, um, <i>another's, strange, unfavorable.</i> |
| grātia, ae, f., <i>favor, influence, kindness.</i> | reperīō, ire, repperī, repertus, <i>find, discover, ascertain.</i> |
| plēbs, plēbis, f., <i>the common people.</i> | sī, conj., <i>if.</i> |
| | nisi, conj., <i>if not, unless, except.</i> |

305.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesari dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxilium, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitātui magnō ūsui fuit. 3. Legiōni satis cibi nōn erat, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Galli sē suaque omnia Rōmānis dēdidērunt, quod magnitūdine eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before¹ him. 2. When he returned to Rome, he saw his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed hers.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exire iubent. 2. Sī quis eius filiam laudat, laetus est. 3. Quidam ex Gallis multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs magnā grātiā erat. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novi² repperit? 6. Liberī quique³ pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocātī erant. 7. Princeps propter dīligentiam magnae potestātis apud suōs fuit. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī aliēnō in locō proelium committent, vincēntur. 10. Finitimī nostri bonō animō⁴ esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless she hears something good² about her son. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

¹ ad. ² See 250, 2. ³ quique (quī + que) = et iī quī. ⁴ bonō animō, *well disposed*.

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

| TENSE | ACTIVE VOICE | PASSIVE VOICE |
|---------|-------------------------------------|---|
| PRESENT | pres. stem + ns ¹ | wanting |
| FUTURE | participial stem + ūrus | Gerundive. Pres. stem + ndus ¹ |
| PERFECT | wanting | the last one of the principal parts |

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (504); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective*. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

¹ 10 verbs have a connecting vowel **e** before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns**, **audiendus**.

1. **Videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as (while) he is doing it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he was doing it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he will be doing it*.

309.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
2. *Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
3. *Future*: expressing an action that is *subsequent to* (not yet done at) the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of **dō**, *give*; **videō**, *see*; **faciō**, *make, do*; **mūniō**, *fortify*; **eō**, *go*. (525.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples, which show the various relations that the participle expresses:

1. **Militēs missōs nōn culpāvit**, *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (lit., *the soldiers sent*). This use is not common; a relative clause is generally used.
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs**, *I saw them as (or when) they were doing this*.
3. **Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit**, *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul*, etc.).
4. **Galli hīs rēbus permōti obsidēs misērunt**, *the Gauls, since*

(or because) *they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages* (literally, *the Gauls having been alarmed, etc.*).

5. **Orgetorix damnātus interficiētur**, *if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed* (literally, *Orgetorix having been condemned will be killed*).
6. **Vulnerātus diū pugnābat**, *although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time* (literally, *having been wounded, he fought*).
7. **Multōs vicōs captōs incendit**, *he captured and burned many villages* (literally, *he burned many captured villages*).

312.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach*.
vāllum, l, n., *rampart, earth-works*.

posterus, a, um, *next, following*.

circum, prep. with acc., *around*.

permōveō, ēre, **permōvī**, **permōtus**, *influence, arouse*.

circumveniō, ire, **circumvēnī**, **circumventus**, *come around, surround*.

ēdūcō, ere, **ēdūxī**, **eductus**, *lead out*.

laccessō, ere, **laccessivī**, **laccessitus**, *attack, harass*.

Sēquani, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sequani* (a tribe of Gauls).

313.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Hīc grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat**.
2. **Gallī cōsiliū cēpērunt quod Rōmānīs nōn grātum erat**.
3. **Sī quid reperitur, Caesarī semper nūntiātur**.
4. **Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat**.
5. **Hominēs summae virtūtis esse dicuntur**.

II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival. 2. The day that Caesar had appointed¹ with the ambassadors has come. 3. He ordered the hostages to come to him. 4. He carried all his possessions with him.

¹ cōstituō.

314.

EXERCISES

I. 1. His rebus permōti Rōmā exīre mātūrant. 2. In lēgātōs cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcentēs Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidī mūnientēs hostēs lacescent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vāllō et moenibus mūnītā obsidēre cōstituērunt. 5. Caesar duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū lacessitus impetum sustinēre poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castrīs ēductās instrūxit. 7. Suum amīcum domō exeuntem videt. 8. Principēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcērant certior factus est. 10. Lēgātus Gallōs quī castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed¹ of this, he hurried to Rome. 2. The general captured² their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing³ the river. 4. If you are defeated,⁴ you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Although we have been surrounded,⁵ we will fight bravely.

¹ 311, 3.² 311, 7.³ 311, 2.⁴ 311, 5.⁵ 311, 6.

(READING SELECTION 457)

*A Siege*

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. **Ablative Absolute.** — A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples :

- | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar, Germānis victis, in hiberna vēnit, | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>after the Germans had been conquered, when he had conquered the Germans, after conquering the Germans, having conquered the Germans, now that the Germans had been conquered, the Germans having been conquered,</i> </div> | } Caesar went into winter quarters. |
| 2. Oppidō expugnātō, hostēs vincent, | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>if the town is captured, by capturing the town, since the town has been captured, the town having been captured,</i> </div> | } they will conquer the enemy. |
| 3. Nōbis castra mūnientibus, Galli pervēnērunt, | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>while we were fortifying the camp, as we were fortifying the camp,</i> </div> | } the Gauls arrived. |

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānis victis**, **oppidō expugnātō**, **nōbis mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause (the word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself). For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Galli victi domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction would not be used, because it is possible to make **victi** agree with **Galli**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives, or a substantive or pronoun and an adjective, are sometimes used in the ablative absolute construction.

| | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|---|
| Duce Caesare Rōmāni semper vincēbant, | { | <i>lit. Caesar (being) leader,</i> <i>under the leadership of Caesar,</i> <i>if Caesar was their leader,</i> <i>when Caesar was their leader,</i> | } | <i>the Romans</i> <i>always used</i> <i>to conquer.</i> |
|--|---|--|---|---|

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered: **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit**.

318.

VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*
signum, i, n., *sign, ensign,*
standard (of the legion).
quam primum, as soon as
possible.
tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus,
lift up, raise, remove, take
away.
redūcō, ere, redūxi, reductus,
lead back.

obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus,
possess, obtain, retain.
convertō, ere, converti, con-
versus, turn about, change.
signa convertō, face about (lit-
erally, turn the standards
about).
occidō, ere, occidi, occisus, cut
down, kill, slay.
inquam, inquit, def., say.

319.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostrīs diū lacessitis mīsit.
 2. Caesar hostium clāmōribus permōtus mūnīre aditūs
 castrōrum coepit. 3. Cōsul lēgātum sēcum redire Rōmam
 iubēbit. 4. Equitātus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs
 lacessēbat. 5. Lēgātus nihil novī repperit.

II. 1. After the Helvetii had been defeated, they were
 compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of
 the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our
 men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The
 Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tē imperātōre, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō
 factō, suōs in hīberna redūxit. 3. Hīs Caesarī nūntiātīs,
 quam primum Rōmā exiit. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs
 hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suīs¹ ā Gallīs
 permōtis¹ Caesar "Impetum" inquit "hostium expectāre
 est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, signīs conversis, laces-

¹ Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesarī Rōmam redīre coāctō hoc proelium nūntiātum erat. 8. Hostēs, multīs occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omnī spē victōriæ sublātā, Helvētīī cum mulieribus liberisque domum rediērunt. 10. Oppidum quod Gallī mūnierant ā Rōmānīs incēsum est.

II. 1. Having fought this battle,¹ Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When their leader had been killed, the Gauls surrendered to Caesar. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. If our villages are burned, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

CAESAR ATTEMPTS TO CHECK THE MARCH OF THE
HELVEII. THEY SEND AMBASSADORS TO HIM

321. His rēbus nūntiātīs Caesar mātūrat Rōmā exire atque quam maximīs itineribus ad Genāvam contendit. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna.² Quā³ rē prōvinciam tōtam praebēre quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem qui erat ad Genāvam rescindi iubet. Ubi dē

¹ = this battle having been made. ² but (only) one. ³ Quā rē, therefore.

eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs. Quī¹ lēgātī iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antiquis Helvētīi cōsulem Cassium occīderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inimicō animō² iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem conloquiō cum lēgātīs cōstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts :

INFINITIVES

| TENSE | ACTIVE VOICE | PASSIVE VOICE |
|---------|--|---|
| PRESENT | Second one of the principal parts. | Change final <i>e</i> of present infinitive to <i>i</i> , except in third conjugation, which changes final <i>ere</i> to <i>i</i> . |
| FUTURE | Future active participle and <i>esse</i> . | Supine in <i>-um</i> (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and <i>iri</i> . |
| PERFECT | Perfect stem + <i>isse</i> . | Perfect passive participle and <i>esse</i> . |

¹ The relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence where English uses a personal pronoun or a demonstrative with or without *and*; hence *Quī lēgātī* = *these ambassadors*.

² See 303.

1. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

vinciō, bind.

iubeō, order.

relinquō, leave.

sum, I am (521).

iaciō, throw.

appellō, name, call.

vincō, conquer.

eō, go (525).

324.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, ātis, f., reputation, influence, authority.

littera, ae, f., letter of the alphabet; (plur.), letter, document.

rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, supplies of grain, provisions.

cottidiānus, a, um, daily.

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, write.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall, perish, die.

at, conj., but.

numquam, adv., never.

325.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli cōnsulem cōpiās instruentem lacessivērunt.
2. Rōmānī, signīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōsule Helyētīi coniūratiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī finitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostri autem multās mulierēs captās domum misērunt.

II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy?
2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After a few had been slain, the army was led back to camp. 4. And so hope was taken away from the Gauls.

326.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scribī; sustulisse; cāsūrum esse. 2. Instruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibērī. 3. Capi; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; misisse; redūci. 5. Paucae dē filiābus occisae esse dicuntur. 6. Numquam culpārī cupimus. 7. Galli ā finitimis cottidiānis proeliis lacessiti ex suis finibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās litterās scripsisse dicēbātur. 9. Frūmentum ad Caesarem nāvibus portārī nōn poterat. 10. At decem ē nostris cecidisse in hōc proeliō dicuntur.

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be burned. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

(READING SELECTION 458)

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which instead of the original words or thoughts we have their substance (general sense) stated in the words of another.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated thus: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

tū venis, you are coming.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**dicit tē venire, he says that
you are coming, or he says
you are coming.**

Note

1. That the English generally expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. RULE. — Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb, the perfect as *completed by (before) that time*, the future as *not yet begun at that time*.

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed :

| TENSE | DIRECT DISCOURSE | INDIRECT DISCOURSE |
|------------|----------------------------------|---|
| PRESENT | veniō, I am coming | PRESENT videt mē venire, he sees that I am coming |
| | | PAST vidit mē venire, he saw that I was coming |
| IMPERFECT | veniēbam, I was coming | PRESENT audit mē vēnisse, he hears that I came, or have come |
| PERFECT | vēni, I have come, I came | PAST audivit mē vēnisse, he heard that I came, or had come |
| PLUPERFECT | vēneram, I had come | |
| FUTURE | veniam, I shall come | PRESENT spērat mē ventūrum (esse), he hopes that I shall come |
| | | PAST spērāvit mē ventūrum (esse), he hoped that I should come |

CAUTION.—The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

331.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| existimō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>think, believe, suppose.</i> | trādō, ere, trādidi, trāditus, <i>give up, surrender, deliver.</i> |
| dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>point out, show, mention.</i> | cōspectus, ūs, m., <i>sight, view.</i> |
| spērō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>hope.</i> | |
| respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsum, <i>answer, reply.</i> | complūrēs, a (ia), <i>a great many, very many.</i> |
| sciō, scire, scīvi, scītus, <i>know, know how</i> | |

332.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dixit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Sē in cōspectū suī¹ imperātōris pugnāvisse mīles existimāvit. 6. Armīs trāditīs, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūtiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditīs, in suam potestātem vēnisse. 8. Omnēs scīmus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātam esse. 9. Caesar suīs "Quis scīt" inquit "hunc pontem facere?" 10. Imperātōrī nūtiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgātī respondērunt "Nōs ā finitimīs nostrīs diū lacesimur."

II. 1. The gods will give us help. 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest² courage. 4. I hope many have not fallen. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, "I hope that they will retreat."

¹ The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement usually refer to the subject of the main verb of "saying," "thinking," etc.

² Do not use *maximus*. See 302, 1.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH *ūtor*, *fruor*, ETC.

333. Dependent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows :

| | PRESENT IND. | PRESENT INF. | PERFECT IND. |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|---|
| 1ST CONJ. | hortor | hortārī | hortātus sum, <i>I urge, encourage</i> |
| 2D CONJ. | vereor | verērī | veritus sum, <i>I fear</i> |
| 3D CONJ. | sequor | sequī | secūtus sum, <i>I follow</i> |
| 4TH CONJ. | potior | potīrī | potītus sum, <i>I get possession of</i> |

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (528.)

334. Dependent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a dependent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortātus militēs proelium commisit, *after encouraging* (literally, *having encouraged*) *his soldiers, he began the battle.*

336. Examine the following :

1. *Equis ūtuntur*, *they use horses.*
2. *Vitā fruitur*, *he enjoys life.*

Observe that *equis* and *vitā* are ablatives, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. RULE. — Ablative with Certain Verbs. — *The ablative is used with the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds.*

338.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|--|
| ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, <i>use,</i> | proficiſcor, proficiſci, profec- |
| <i>employ.</i> | tus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i> |
| sequor, ſequi, ſecūtus sum, <i>follow.</i> | arbitror, ari, ātus sum, <i>think,</i> |
| | <i>suppose.</i> |
| cohortor, ari, ātus sum, <i>en-</i> | pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus, <i>ex-</i> |
| <i>courage, exhort.</i> | <i>pel, drive away, rout.</i> |
| potior, potiri, potitus sum, <i>get possession of.</i> | praesidium, i, n., <i>defense,</i> |
| | <i>guard, garrison.</i> |
| | fossa, ae, f., <i>ditch, trench.</i> |

339.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Ītaliā itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coācti sunt. 3. Lēgātī dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē multum frūmentum dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtiminī; proficiſcētur; proficiſcitur. 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrum esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dixit. 4. Cōsul Rōmā profectus in finēs Helvētiōrum contendit. 5. Germānī ūsī esse parvis equis dicuntur. 6. Cōsul,

exercitū pulsō, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Commeātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēnsus est. 8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnīrī arbitrābantur. 9. Hostēs potirī castrīs nōn posse dux vīdit. 10. Quattuor cohortēs prae-sidiō castrīs Labiēnus reliquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar got possession of the town. 2. For many days the horsemen who were following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions as a garrison. 4. Caesar set¹ out from the city, and began to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that Labienus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fiō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of **ferō** (527) and **fiō** (526).

I. Review the conjugation of **faciō** (177-179), and note that **fiō** is used as the passive of **faciō**.

342. Examine the following :

1. **Nōbīs persuādent**, *they persuade us*.
2. **Imperātōrī pāret**, *he obeys the commander*.

Observe that **nōbīs** and **imperātōrī** are datives, while the corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. RULE. — **Dative with Verbs.** — *Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

¹Use a participle.

344.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, <i>carry.</i> | fiō, fieri, factus sum, become, <i>be made.</i> |
| cōferō, cōferre, contuli, conlātus, bring together, <i>gather.</i> | persuādēō, ēre, persuāsi, per- suāsum (w. dat.), persuade. |
| nēmō, dat. nēmini (no gen. or abl.), no one, nobody. | pāreō, ēre, pārui, — (w. dat.), <i>obey.</i> |
| moror, āri, ātus sum, delay, <i>hinder.</i> [resist, oppose. | noceō, ēre, nocui, nocitūrus (w. dat.), harm, injure. |
| resistō, ere, restiti, — (w. dat.), | crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum (w. dat.), believe, trust. |

345.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostrī equitātum Gallōrum tria millia passuum secūtī pepulērunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vicō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnitā potitur. 4. Principēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortātī nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castris ēductōs instrui iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving¹ the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedimentis in ūnum locum conlātis, nostrī aciem instrūxērunt. 2. Pārere suō quisque imperātōrī dēbet. 3. Ad castra multōs diēs morātī Gallī domum sē recēpērunt. 4. Id² persuādere eis numquam poterimus. 5. Nēmō eī haec dicentī crēdit. 6. Oppidum expugnārī nōn poterat, quod

¹ Use the ablative absolute. ² Id is the direct object of **persuādere**.
Translate: of this.

incolae nostris fortiter resistēbant. 7. Boni libri nēmini nocent. 8. Caesar litteris Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās (*Belgians*) contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrātiōnem facere. 9. Quārē (*therefore*) Caesar ad eōs proficisci cōstituit. 10. Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque quindecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

II. 1. They inform Caesar; Caesar is informed by them. 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.¹ 5. I believe that they will injure us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

(READING SELECTION 459)

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

CAESAR ERECTS FORTIFICATIONS. THE HELVETII ATTEMPT TO CROSS THE RHONE, BUT ARE REPELLED

347. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant mūrū pedēs sēdecim altum et fossam ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō et castellis mūnitis, facile eōs prohibēre potest. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum rediērunt, negat² sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Helvētīi autem, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, perrumpere cōnātī³ operis mūnitiōne⁴ et militum tēlis repulsī sunt.

¹ See 272, *senex*. ² *negat sē posse*, says he cannot (literally, denies that he can). ³ From *cōnor*, a deponent verb. ⁴ Can you not infer its meaning from the verb *mūniō*?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (516-520); of *sum* (521); of *possum* (522); of *eō* (525); of *ferō* (527); of *fiō* (526).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular :

| CONJUGATION | PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|------|-----------|------|
| | I | II | III | IV |
| ACTIVE | -em | -eam | -am, -iam | -iam |
| PASSIVE | -er | -ear | -ar, -iar | -iar |

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized :

When he *arrived* it was late.

He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.

He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are considered in this lesson and those following. Its uses in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amicum videat**, *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur**, *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*
- a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amicum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing an affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) a negative clause.
- b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. RULE.—**Subjunctive of Purpose.**—*Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with ut if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with nē if the purpose clause is negative.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of :

| | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|-------------|-----------|
| cōficiō | dēdō | accēdō | proficiātor | ferō |
| committō | reddō | potior | ūtor | persuādeō |
| convertō | redeō | sequor | cadō | noceō |
| cohortor | redūcō | sciō | tollō | scribō |
| agō | reperiō | trādō | obsideō | arbitror |
| crēdō | laccessō | pellō | instruō | fīō |

353.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus liberisque in ūnum locum convocātis, Gallī impetum nostrōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. 2. Ubi Rōmānī ad eōrum finēs pervēnerunt, Gallī eis restitērunt. 3. Lēgātus suum quemque cibum portāre iubet. 4. Orgetorigis filia ā Rōmānīs capta certior fiēbat nēminem sibi nocitūrum (esse). 5. Quis ūtī illō equō potuit?

II. 1. He is informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad primum agmen proficiscitur ut suōs cohortētur. 2. Nostrī, signis conversis, pellere Gallōs coepērunt. 3. Lēgātum in Galliam proficisci iubet nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rēx paucōs diēs morātur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redimus domum nē ab hostibus occidāmur. 6. Gallī magnās cōpiās ūnum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manēsne domī ut litterās paucās scribās? 8. Lēgātī in castra redeunt ut Caesarī persuādeant. 9. Nōs sequiminī ut aliquid reperiātis. 10. Arbitror Gallōs accēdere ut obsidēs redant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar in order not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings **-m** (active), **-r** (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

amāre

mūnīre

monēre

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

amārem amārer

mūnīrem mūnīrer

monērem monērer

1. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples :

They shouted (so) that he might hear. (Purpose.)

They shouted so that he heard. (Result.)

He was so tired that he could not go. (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so, such, in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following :

1. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Galli trānsire nōn possint**, *the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.*

2. Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Galli trānsire nōn possent,
the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.
3. Nostri tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē reciperent,
our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.
4. Tam graviter vulnerāti erant ut pugnāre nōn possent, *they had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.*
- a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with *ut* express the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.
- b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect* (*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent subjunctive is *imperfect*.
- c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not necessarily the same as that of the main verb.

These principles (*b*, *c*) are true also for purpose clauses.

358. RULE. — Subjunctive of Result. — *Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with ut if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with ut nōn if the result clause is negative.*

359.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecū- | dēditio, ōnis, f., <i>surrender.</i> |
| tus sum, <i>pursue, overtake.</i> | calamitas, ātis, f., <i>disaster,</i> |
| prōgredior, prōgredi, prō- | <i>defeat.</i> |
| gressus sum, <i>advance, pro-</i> | tantus, a, um, <i>so great, such.</i> |
| <i>ceed.</i> | tam, adv., <i>so</i> (with adjectives |
| audeō, ēre, ausus ¹ sum, <i>dare.</i> | <i>and adverbs).</i> |
| accipio, ere, accēpi, acceptus, | ita, adv., <i>thus, so.</i> |
| <i>receive.</i> | timor, ōris, m., <i>fear.</i> |
| castellum, i, n., <i>fort, redoubt.</i> | |

¹ A semi-deponent verb ; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trāseunt ut eōrum finēs vāstent. 2. Vicis multīs et parvīs incēnsīs, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castris potiri posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesarī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castris profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trāseuntēs impetum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. I am informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientis cōsequerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā militibus mūnītur ut expugnāri nōn possit. 3. Omnēs quī trānsire Rhodanum ausi sunt tēlis et sagittis vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Galli ita operis magnitudīne permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellis mūnita est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellis ita mūnita est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum finēs decem diēs prōgressus multās civitatēs in dēditionem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenire possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the depth of the river that they could not cross. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

(READING SELECTION 460)

LESSON 61

Volō. Nōlō. Mālō. RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

362. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (524). Observe that **nōlō** is a compound of **nōn** and **volō**, and **mālō** a compound of **magis**, *more* (shortened to **ma**), and **volō**. Note the irregularities in the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

363. Examine the following :

1. **Princeps lēgātōs mīsīt ut pācem peterent,** { *the chief sent*
2. **Princeps lēgātōs mīsīt quī pācem peterent,** { *ambassadors to ask for peace.*

The English translation of these sentences is the same, and the verbs of the purpose clauses are subjunctive. In 2, however, **quī** is used instead of **ut** to emphasize the ambassadors as the persons who have the purpose to perform.

364. **RULE. — Relative Clause of Purpose. — Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion.**

365.

VOCABULARY

petō, ere, petivī (iī), petitus,

aim at, ask for, go to get.

volō, velle, volui, —, be will-

ing, wish, will.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be un-

willing, will not.

mālō, mälle, mālui, —, be

more willing, prefer.

impediō, ire, impedivī, impe-

ditus, entangle, impede.

praemittō, ere, praemisi, prae-

missus, send ahead, dis-
patch.

celeriter, adv. (celer, swift),

swiftly, quickly.

senātus, ūs, m., senate.

dē tertiā vigiliā, about the
third watch (a watch was
equal to one fourth of the
night).

366.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostrī tam ācritē pugnābant ut Helvētīi aliī aliam in partem fugerent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditionē certior factus legiōnēs in hiberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallīs crēdere arbitrābatur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain. 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that they overtook the enemy. 3. They will not try to resist our soldiers. 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvultis; nolumus. 2. Māvīs; nōlēis; mālunt. 3. Imperātor militēs praemisit quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multī esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redire mālēbant. 6. Helvētīi lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum finēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent praemiserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dixerunt¹ sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesar hīs rēbus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōsequerentur praemisit.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the senate. 4. The Helvetii

¹ Notice how the translation of the indicative, *dixerunt*, differs from that of the subjunctive, *dicerent*.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although¹ a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (516–520); of **sum** (521); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **possum** (522); of **fiō** (526); of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (524).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **-erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following:

DIRECT QUESTION

Ubi sunt? *where are they?*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō ubi sint, *I know where they are.*
Vidimus quid faceret, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

¹ See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō quis veniat,
I know who is coming.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Sciō eum venire,
I know (that) he is coming.

370. RULE. — **Indirect Question.** — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare :

He *comes* that I *may* see him.
He *came* that I *might* see him.

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows :

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time. | } | Present Indicative, Perfect Indicative, some- times, when it means <i>have</i> , Future Indicative, Future Perfect Indicative, Present Subjunctive, Perfect Subjunctive. |
|---|---|--|

| | | |
|--|---|-------------------------|
| Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time. | { | Imperfect Indicative, |
| | | Perfect Indicative, |
| | | Pluperfect Indicative, |
| | | Imperfect Subjunctive, |
| | | Pluperfect Subjunctive. |

373. Examine the following :

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | { Videt, <i>he sees</i> , Vidēbit, <i>he will see</i> , Viderit, <i>he will have seen</i> , | { quid faciam, <i>what I am</i> <i>doing</i> . |
| 2. | { Videt, <i>he sees</i> , Vidēbit, <i>he will see</i> , Viderit, <i>he will have seen</i> , | { quid fēcerim, <i>what I have</i> <i>done (or did)</i> . |
| 3. | { Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing</i> , Vidit, <i>he saw</i> , Viderat, <i>he had seen</i> , | { quid facerem, <i>what I was</i> <i>doing</i> . |
| 4. | { Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing</i> , Vidit, <i>he saw</i> , Viderat, <i>he had seen</i> , | { quid fēcissem, <i>what I had</i> <i>done (or did)</i> . |

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. RULE. — **Sequence of Tenses.** — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined commonly by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause.

1. Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have*, *has*, . . ., is followed by a primary tense.

375.

VOCABULARY

prōcēdō, ere, prōcessi, prōces-
sum, *go forward, advance.*
cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try,*
attempt.

conloquor, conloqui, conlocū-
tus sum, *speak together,*
confer.

in animō habēō, } *I have in*
mihi est in } *mind, in-*
animō. } *tend.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*

in reliquum tempus, *for the*
future.

inter sē dare, *to exchange,*
give each other.

in flūmine pontem faciō,
build a bridge across the
river.

rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, *ask, beg.*
teneō, ēre, tenui, —, *hold.*

376.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātore ē proeliō discēdere audē-
bit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex
castris ēductās instrui iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūntiātum
summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 5. Ubi¹ ire mēcum
māvīs?

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly
as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men
while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey
your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar
hastens to the river.

377.

EXERCISES

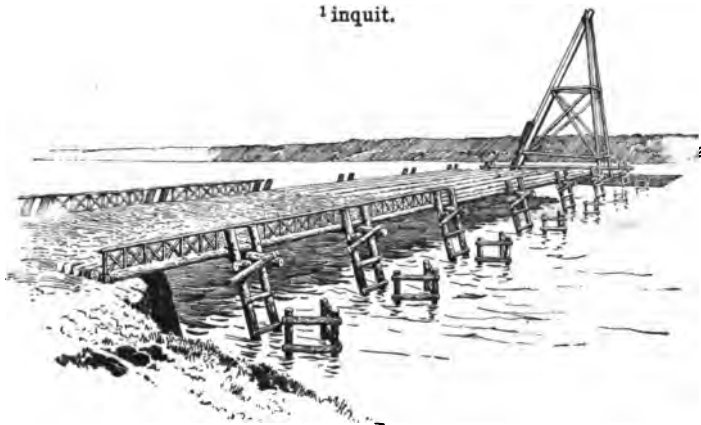
I. 1. Helvētiis est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere.
2. Caesar rogāvit cūr inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Principēs
ut dē dēditione conloquantur convenient. 4. Imperātor
multōs diēs scīverat quae Gallī facere cōnātī essent.
5. Caesar praemittet eōs quī in flūmine pontem faciant.
6. Lēgātī Gallōrum Caesarī dixerunt quae sibi in animō in reli-
quum tempus facere esset. 7. Germāni Caesarem rogāverunt

¹ *When.*

"Cūr in nostrōs finēs prōcessisti?" 8. Germāni Caesarem rogāvērunt cūr in suōs finēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis multīs castellīs mūnitus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent. 10. In animō habēmus obsidēs inter nōs dare.

II. 1. We know who goes to the city. 2. The lieutenant said,¹ "Who goes to Rome?" 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.

¹ inquit.



Pōns in fluminae

LESSON 63

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

378. A substantive clause is one that is used as a noun. Its use as subject or object of a verb is most common. In the following English examples the substantive clauses are italicized :

- I know *what he has done*. (As object.)
 I know (*that*) *he has come*. (As object.)
 It happened *that he was present*. { (As subject, or in appo-
 sition with subject.)
 He persuaded us *to leave the city*. (As object.)
 We feared *that he might die*. (As object.)
 I do not doubt *that he will go*. (As object.)
 He ordered us *to leave the city*. (As object.)

It will be observed from these examples that substantive clauses are expressed in English in several ways. In Latin substantive clauses are usually expressed either by the infinitive or by the subjunctive. This use of the infinitive in indirect discourse and as complementary infinitive, and of the subjunctive in indirect questions, we have already considered.

379. Subjunctive clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* are very often used in Latin as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree*. As an infinitive phrase is used in English as the object of such verbs, while *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive is used in Latin, this difference in usage must be carefully noted.

EXAMPLES

- Helvētīlīs persuāsīt ut exīrent, he persuaded the Helvetii to leave.**
- Sulīs imperat nē id faciant, he orders his men not to do this.**
- Militēs cohortātūr ut impetum sustineant, he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack.**
- Tē rogō ut mihi crēdās, I ask you to believe me.**

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned :

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, order, command.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, order, command.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask, beg.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, demand, ask.

moneō, ēre, monui, monitus, advise, warn.

petō, ere, petivi (ii), petitus, ask, request.

quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesitus, inquire, ask.

cohortor (and hortor), āri, ātus sum, encourage, urge.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissum, permit, allow.

concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum, permit, allow.

1. The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English :

iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order, command.

vetō, āre, vetui, vetitus, forbid.

2. The following are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

patior, pati, passus sum, suffer, allow.

cōstituō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, determine.

cupiō, ere, cupivi, cupitus, desire.

volō (also nōlō and mālō), velle, volui, wish.

381.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Sciō quid tibi sit in animō. 2. Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocūtī domum rediērunt. 3. Eōs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent. 4. Helvētiī respondērunt sēsē exīre ē finibus nōn cōnātūrōs. 5. Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt?

II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night.
2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves.
3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields.
4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suis imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permovērentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiīs superātis, bellum gerere cum Germānīs cōstituit. 4. Dumnorix Sēquanīs persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētīi finitimōs cohortābantur ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātus iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūrātiōnem in reliquum tempus facerent. 8. Galli nōn permittunt ut quisquam vinō ūtātur. 9. Ubi Caesar in Gallōrum finēs pervēnit, suōs vāstāre agrōs vetuit. 10. Nostrī magnum Gallōrum fugientium numerum occidērunt.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands¹ us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked him² what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now³ that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

(READING SELECTION 461)

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

DUMNORIX PERSUADES THE SEQUANI TO ALLOW THE
HELVETII TO MARCH THROUGH THEIR TERRITORY

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītis propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Cum⁴ his ipsī Helvētīi persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem

¹ imperō. ² Use the accusative. ³ Now . . . conquered, use abl. abs. ⁴ since, when.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō¹ dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.² Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiū, ut sine iniūriā trāseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum**
TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following :

1. **Timeō nē hoc faciat**, *I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear that he is doing this*).
2. **Timēbam ut hoc faceret**, *I feared that he would not do this*.

Observe

- a. That the clauses **nē hoc faciat** and **ut hoc faceret** are the object of the main verb.
- b. That we translate the **nē** clause affirmatively (*that*, etc.), and the **ut** clause negatively (*that not*, etc.).

385. RULE.—**Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.**—*The subjunctive with nē, that, or ut, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

386. Examine the following :

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit**, *when Caesar came into Gaul*.
2. **Cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *when Caesar was in Gaul*.
3. **Cum Caesari id nūntiātum esset**, *when this had been reported to Caesar*.

¹ eō dēprecātōre, *by his mediation* (literally, *he (being) an intercessor; ablative absolute*). ² Do not confuse this verb with **imperō**.

4. **Cum** his persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt, *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*
5. **Cum** primī ōrdinēs concidissent, reliquī tamen resistēbant, *although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.*

Cum, meaning *when* (**cum** temporal, sentences 1, 2, 3), is used with the indicative if the verb of its clause refers to present or future time. **Cum**, meaning *when, after*, is commonly used with the subjunctive, if the verb of its clause refers to past time; but the indicative is sometimes used to point out clearly the exact time at which the main action took place (**cum** then = **quō temporē**). **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum causal**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum concessive**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. **RULE.** — **Cum** clauses. — 1. In a **cum** clause expressing time, the verb is, if present or future, in the indicative; if the verb is past, it is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.

2. In a **cum** clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.

388.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|--|
| vereor, ēri, veritus sum, <i>fear, respect.</i> | signa inferō, <i>charge</i> (literally, <i>bear the standards against</i>). |
| timeō, ēre, timui, —, <i>fear, be afraid of.</i> | in fidem venire, <i>to put one's self under the protection.</i> |
| intellegō, ere, intellēxi, intellēctus, <i>learn, know, perceive.</i> | postquam, conj., <i>after.</i> |
| | polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum, <i>promise.</i> |

380.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suis imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiīs nē iter per prōvinciam faciant mandat. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quaesivērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse. 5. Helvētiī finitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsis, sēcum exirent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered¹ the Gauls to give up their arms.

390.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar timēbat ut nostrī impetum sustinērent. 2. Cum hoc fēcimus, tamen ā nostris amīcis nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nostrōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent. 4. Cum nostrī fortiter resisterent, Galli sē recipere cōstituērunt. 5. Helvētiī superāti in Caesaris fidem venīre volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellexeret, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, et militēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hōc factō, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Galli polliciti sunt sē sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs sīgna conversa inferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although² the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

¹ Use iubeō. ² Although . . . resisted. Express in two ways. See 311. 6, 315, 386. 5.

4. I fear that he is coming. 5. I know that he is coming.
6. I know who is coming. 7. The man that I saw in Rome has arrived. 8. Since the enemy have fled, we will return home.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review **possum** (274). The verb **sum** is often compounded with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō** (**prōd**), **super**. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound **prōsum**, *I benefit*, **prōd**, not **prō**, is found before **e**. Learn the conjugation of **prōsum** (523).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of **sum**:

- absum**, **abesse**, **āfui**, —, *be away, be absent.*
adsum, **adesse**, **adfui**, —, *be present, aid.*
dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfui**, —, *be lacking, fail.*
obsum, **obesse**, **obfui**, —, *be against, injure.*
praesum, **praeesse**, **praefui**, —, *be at the head of, command.*
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, —, *be of use to, benefit.*

393. Examine the following:

1. **Lēgātus oppidō praefuit**, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town.*
2. **Amicis prōsumus**, *we benefit our friends.*
3. **Exercitus hostibus appropinquābat** (**ad** + **propinquō**), *the army was approaching the enemy.*
4. **Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he puts honor before money, or he prefers honor to money.*

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. RULE. — Dative with Compound Verbs. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

395.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum | vis (no gen. or dat. sing.), |
| (w. dat.), <i>approach, draw near.</i> | vim, vi , (501) f., plur., |
| | virēs, ium, ibus , <i>strength,</i> |
| bellum inferō, inferre, intuli, | <i>power; (plur.), strength.</i> |
| inlātus, and dative, make | iterum, adv., <i>again, a second</i> |
| <i>war upon.</i> | <i>time.</i> |

396.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Verēmur ut impetum sustineant. 2. Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur. 3. Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intellexit. 4. Quae¹ cum ita sint, in hostium finibus morābimur.

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance.
2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing.
3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide.
4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum finibus Gallōrum appropinquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit. 2. Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod virēs deerant. 3. Germānī dixērunt

¹ *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī quī suīs amīcīs obsunt nōn sunt fidī. 5. Gallī mulierēs liberōsque ūnum in locum convocābant nē tēlīs interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum quī castrīs praeesset reliquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trāditīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātus ab hostium finibus nōn amplius¹ duōbus millibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnēs quī eā in pugnā fuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidī incolae paucī essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if² Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

(READING SELECTION 462)

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398.

FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

| SECOND PERSON | | SECOND PERSON | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------------|---------------|
| IMPERATIVE ACTIVE | | IMPERATIVE PASSIVE | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| amā, <i>love</i> | amāte | amāre, <i>be loved</i> | amāmini |
| monē, <i>advise</i> | monēte | monēre, <i>be advised</i> | monēmini |
| mitte, <i>send</i> | mittite | mittere, <i>be sent</i> | mittimini |
| cape, <i>take</i> | capite | capere, <i>be taken</i> | capimini |
| audi, <i>hear</i> | audite | audire, <i>be heard</i> | audimini |

¹ more.

² if . . . general: see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative singular has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in -re* and the *second person plural of the present indicative passive*.

The present active imperatives of *dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō* are *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*.

Give the imperative forms in the second person of *gerō, videō, dīcō, mūniō, accipiō, sequor, laudō*.

399. The imperative, second person, is used to command or order; the subjunctive, in the *first and the third persons*, is used to exhort or urge. For example:

| | AFFIRMATIVE | NEGATIVE |
|----------|---------------------------------|--|
| 1ST PER. | <i>laudem, let me praise</i> | <i>nē laudem, let me not praise</i> |
| 2D PER. | <i>laudā, praise</i> | <i>nōli laudāre, do not praise</i> |
| 3D PER. | <i>laudet, let him praise</i> | <i>nē laudet, let him not praise</i> |
| 1ST PER. | <i>laudēmus let us praise</i> | <i>nē laudēmus, let us not praise</i> |
| 2D PER. | <i>laudāte, praise</i> | <i>nōlite laudāre, do not praise</i> |
| 3D PER. | <i>laudent, let them praise</i> | <i>nē laudent, let them not praise</i> |

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is *nē*, but that *nē* is *not* used with the imperative; instead *nōli* or *nōlite* (pres. imperative of *nōlō, be unwilling*) is used with the infinitive. Do not use *nē* or *nōn* with the imperative to express a negative command.

400.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| praeficiō, ere, praefēci, praefectus, <i>set over, put in charge of.</i> | revertor, reverti, reverti, re- versus, ¹ dep., <i>turn back, return.</i> |
| referō, referre, rettuli, relatus, <i>carry back; referre pedem, retreat.</i> | animadvertō, ere, animadverti, animadversus (animus + ad + vertō), <i>turn the mind to, notice.</i> |
| ad multam noctem, <i>till late at night.</i> | adversus, a, um, <i>opposite, facing, hostile; adversō colle, up the hill.</i> |
| longē, adv., <i>far, far off.</i> | |
| Ariovistus, I, m., <i>Ariovistus, chief of the Germans.</i> | |

401.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest. 2. Hostium ducēs cōnātī sunt castellum, cui praeerat lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex Caesaris lēgātis, oppidō appropinquāre contendit. 5. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, virī summā grātiā apud suōs ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of the Roman people is very great."

402.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli respondērunt, "Nōlite Rōmānis bellum inferre." 2. Dic mihi quid in animō tibi sit. 3. Fortiter pugnēmus² nē in potestātem Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

¹ This verb in the perfect system, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, has only active forms. The perfect participle is deponent. ² Notice that the subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence. See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūrātiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē revertī iussit. 5. Cum virēs tōtae deessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Signa inferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbi captae Caesar praefecit. 8. Cum nostrī ad multam noctem contendissent, nēmō ab hostibus occisus est. 9. Ariovistus Caesari "Cūr" inquit "in meōs fīnēs venīs?" 10. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē Caesar cōstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labienus,¹ lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We noticed that our men had not seized the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Carefully distinguish the difference in English between a verbal noun and a verbal adjective. They both end in *-ing*, the verbal noun being used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples:

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of "is.")

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund* is a verbal noun. It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

¹ Review page 15, footnote, and page 27, footnote 1.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (516-520). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following :

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| NOM. | { Vidēre est crēdere , <i>seeing is believing</i> (infinitive as subject). |
| GEN. | { Ars vivendi (gerund), <i>the art of living</i> . Vēnit amicōrum videndōrum causā (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the sake of seeing his friends)</i> . |
| DAT. ¹ | { Vix his rēbus administrandis tempus dabātur (gerundive), <i>time was hardly given for managing these things</i> . |
| ACC. | { Vēnit ad pugnandum (gerund), <i>he came to fight (for fighting, or for the purpose of fighting)</i> . Vēnit ad amicōs videndōs (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the purpose of seeing his friends)</i> . |
| ABL. | { Mēns discendō alitur (gerund), <i>the mind is strengthened by learning</i> . Conlocūtī sunt dē cōsillis faciendis (gerundive), <i>they conferred about forming plans</i> . |

Observe

1. That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

¹ The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common; ad and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive, not the gerund, is generally used when there is an object.
3. That purpose may be expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by *causā* following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>coniciō, ere, coniciēci, coniectus,</i> | <i>causa, ae, f., cause, reason ;</i> |
| <i>throw, hurl.</i> | <i>abl., for-the-sake-of, in-</i> |
| <i>dēligō, ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus,</i> | <i>order-to (after a genitive).</i> |
| <i>select, choose. [opportunity.</i> | <i>cupidus, a, um, desirous (of),</i> |
| <i>spatium, i, n., space, time,</i> | <i>eager (for) (with genitive).</i> |
| <i>discō, ere, didici, —, learn.</i> | <i>dēnique, adv., finally, at last.</i> |
| <i>turris, is, f., tower.</i> | <i>iam, adv., now, already, soon.</i> |

408.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropinquantibus, castris lēgātum praeficere. 3. Omnibus Gallis superātis, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. 5. Dīc nōbīs quōs Rōmae viderīs.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be conquered.

409.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agendō agere discimus. 2. Militēs finem pugnandi fēcērunt. 3. Militēs cupidī potiendī oppidī erant. 4. Bellum gerere hieme difficillimum est. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatium tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castris dēlēgit. 7. Lēgāti ad pācem petendam vērērunt. 8. Com-

plūrēs principēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās annum satis esse Helvētīi arbitrābantur. 10. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs inferendō cōsilia capiēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discēdāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for¹ defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to² fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 228 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs :

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| timeō | prōcēdō | coniciō | imperō |
| appropinquō | petō | dēligō | pāreō |
| intellegō | permittō | animadvertō | quaerō |
| polliceor | volō | revertor | cōnsequor |
| conloquor | nōlō | moror | audeō |
| vereor | mālō | obtineō | prōgredior |
| cōnor | respondeō | praeficiō | |

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) tollō in the first person singular, and of (2) cōnor in the third person plural.

¹ for defending : genitive case.

² to fortify : express in four ways.

FORM¹ FOR SYNOPSIS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

| TENSE | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE | IMPERATIVE | INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLE |
|------------------------------|------------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Pres. { Act. Pass. | | | | | |
| Imperf. { Act. Pass. | | | | | |
| Fut. { Act. Pass. | | | | | |
| Perf. { Act. Pass. | | | | | |
| Plup. { Act. Pass. | | | | | |
| Fut. { Act. Perf. { Pass. | | | | | |

(READING SELECTION 463)

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

CAESAR PREPARES TO DEFEAT THE PLANS OF THE
HELVETII

412. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per
agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs

¹ This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolosātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, prōvinciae esse fīnitimōs. Ob eās rēs ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum prae-fēcit, et ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hie-mābant,¹ ex hibernīs ēdūcit et cum hīs quinque legiōnibus īre in ulteriōrem Galliā contendit. Ibi nōnnūllae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē² septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

¹ Can you not infer its meaning from *hiems* ?

² Why ablative ?



Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those teachers who wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by “if,” “if not,” “unless,” and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example :

If it rains, I shall not go.

If he had not seen me, I should have gone.

You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using “if,” “if not,” “unless,” by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example :

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows :

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.

2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415.

SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following :

1. **SI hoc faciunt, bene est**, *if they are doing this, it is well.*
 2. **SI hoc fēcērunt, bene fuit**, *if they did this, it was well.*
- a.* Observe that the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether "they did this" or not; *it merely makes a supposition.*
 - b.* That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416.

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

1. **SI hoc facerent, bene esset**, *if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.*
 2. **SI hoc fēcissent, bene fuisset**, *if they had done this, it would have been well.*
- a.* Observe that the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this. So too the conclusion (or apodosis) makes a statement contrary to the facts; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that it is not now well, the second sentence that it was not well.
 - b.* That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417.

EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary. But see Hints for Translation, 136.)

I. 1. *Sī meus amicus Rōmae est, laetus sum.* 2. *Sī Helvētīi ācrius Rōmānīs restitissent, nōn victī essent.* 3. *Sī adesset, exīre Rōmā parātī essēmus.* 4. *Laetus fuit pater, sī quis liberōs laudāvit.* 5. *Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem instrūxisset.* 6. *Plūrēs Gallī occisī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōsecūtī essent.* 7. *Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proeli committendī sīgnum?*

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Romē, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418.

VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

Sī hoc facient, bene erit, if they do this (i.e. shall do this), it will be well.

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "shall").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states positively what will be the result, if the condition shall prove to be true.
- c. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

- z. That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they shall do this").

419. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Si hoc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states less positively, as a mere possibility, what the result would be, should the condition prove to be true.
- c. That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

I. Present or Past Time.

1. Simple. Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
2. Contrary to Fact.
 - a. Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
 - b. Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

1. Vivid Future — Future¹ indicative in both parts.
2. Less Vivid Future — Present¹ subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been indicated in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of *si* or *nisi*. For example :

¹ For the sake of clearness the use of other tenses in the protasis of future conditions is not here treated.

Principēs Gallōrum victi Rōmam mittentur, the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered (literally, having been conquered), will be sent to Rome.

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Si equitēs cōsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occident. 2. Si equitēs cōsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occīdant. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam ter-rēbimur. 4. Helvētīi flūmen Rhodanum trānsissent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs liberāti domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trāditīs, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Si hostēs flūmen trāseant, nostrī nōn cō-sequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have attacked them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the town has been well fortified?

(READING SELECTION 464)

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

I. Those that refer to the future. For example :

May my friend come !

Would that my friend would come !

O that my friend would come !

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example :

| | |
|---|--|
| O that my friend were here ! | } referring to present time, and implying that he is not here. |
| I wish (that) my friend were here ! | |
| Would that my friend were here ! | |
| O that my friend had been here ! | } referring to past time, and implying that he was not here. |
| I wish (that) my friend had been here ! | |
| Would that my friend had been here ! | |

424. Examine the following :

1. (**Utinam**) **meus amicus veniat**, *may my friend come !* (a wish about the future).
 2. **Utinam meus amicus adesset**, *would that my friend were here !* (a wish hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
 3. **Utinam meus amicus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here !* (a wish hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).
- a. Observe that the subjunctive is used to express a wish.
 - b. That the present (or perfect) subjunctive expresses a wish relating to the future, that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect a wish hopeless in past time.
 - c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary to fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. RULE. — Subjunctive in Wishes.— *Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam**; wishes hopeless in present time by **utinam** with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by **utinam** with the pluperfect subjunctive.*

426.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Utinam nē Gallī coniūrātiōnem fēcissent!* 2. *Miles ē proeliō nē discēdat!* 3. *Utinam hoc facerent!* 4. *Helvētīl "Utinam" inquit¹ "nē altissimis montibus continērēmur!"* 5. *Utinam nē Germānī populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent!* 6. *Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!*

II. 1. May he always obey the general! 2. I wish we had gone to Athens! 3. Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul! 4. O that he had not persuaded me! 5. May we be killed, if we surrender our arms! 6. Would that we were able to go with you!

LESSON 74

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb, if the main clause makes a statement (affirmative or negative),² follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse.— In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

¹ Plural of *inquit*. ² The treatment of main clauses involving command has been purposely excluded from this book.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer commonly to the subject of the introductory verb, but sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Vir quem videō meus amicus
est, the man whom I see is
my friend.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Present Time

Dicit virum quem videat suum
amicum esse, he says that
the man whom he sees is
his friend.

Past Time

Dixit virum quem vidēret
suum amicum esse, he
said that the man whom
he saw was his friend.

Observe

- a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.
- b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **videō** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dicit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dixit**, is a secondary tense.
- c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. RULE. — **Moods in Indirect Discourse.** — *In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt.
 2. Dixit militēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse.
 3. Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, Caesar castra mūniēbat. 4. Dixērunt Caesarem, ubi ad suum exercitum pervēnissent, castra mūnīvisse. 5. Caesar dixit suōs flūmen, quod¹ altissimum esset, trānsire nōn posse. 6. Ariovistus Caesarī “Volō” inquit “hīs dē rēbus, quae inter nōs agī² coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere² tēcum.” 7. Ariovistus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē eis rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.

II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after audiō. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after dixit. 7. Ariovistus replied that those who have conquered ought to rule³ those whom they have conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT
WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Acriter pugnātum est, *the battle was fought sharply*, or *there was sharp fighting* (literally, *it was sharply fought*).

¹ because.² agō, treat.³ imperō.

Vōs hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (more literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vōbis hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in **-um** and **-ū**. These forms are used only in the following constructions :

Lēgātī vēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar*.

Hoc difficile est factū, *this is difficult to do*.

The supine in **-um** is used to express purpose, but only after verbs of motion ; the supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns, as ablative of specification.

434. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English ?

EXAMPLES

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| Helvētī lēgātōs misērunt | { | ut pācem peterent, quī pācem peterent, pācis petendae causā, ad pācem petendam, pācem petitum, | } | <i>the Helvetii sent am- bassadors to seek peace.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|---|--|
| Militēs mittun- tur | { | ad pugnandum, pugnandī causā, | } | <i>the soldiers are sent to fight.</i> |
|--------------------------------|---|--|---|--|

435. RULE. — Supine in **-um**. — *The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.*

436.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Hoc est mīrābile dictū**. 2. **Ariovistus respondit**, “**Tē ad mē venire oportet**.” 3. **Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad**

Caesarem vēnērunt auxilium petītum. 4. Si volunt, eis ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem¹ flūmen Arar fluat oculis iūdicārī nōn potest. 6. Helvētīi rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Gallī coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere nūntius dicit.

II. 1. He went to Rome to² see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

(READING SELECTION 465)

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and the verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example:

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise, or is going to praise, or intends to praise.*

For all forms of this conjugation, see 529.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example:

Sciō quem visūrus sit, *I know whom he is going to see, or whom he will see.*

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

¹ direction. ² to see his daughters : express in three ways. /

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation or necessity*. For example :

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised, or he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 530.

439. USES OF THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," **id mihi agendum est**.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," **nōbīs veniendum est**.

EXAMPLES

Urbs est mūnienda, *the city must be fortified*.

Nōbīs fortiter pugnandum est, *we ought to (or must) fight bravely* (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Visūrī erāmus**; **amātūra fuit**; **monitūrae erant**.
2. **Nōbīs cum Gallīs bellum gerendum est**. 3. **Incolae oppidī ēruptiōnem erant factūrī**. 4. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant**; **aciēs instruenda**, **signum dandum**, **militēs ab opere revocandī erant**. 5. **Sī victūrī sumus**, **nōbīs fortissimē contendendum erit**. 6. **Soiēbam quid vōs factūrī**

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolīs quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

NOTE

THE following exercises are intended to provide additional material for the rapid reading of connected prose. Each selection is based on the vocabulary and constructions already acquired. Nothing has been admitted that has not been previously studied, with the exception of a very few necessary words, all of which are indicated by superior figures and translated in footnotes. Such words, however, present no additional difficulty in form or construction. Proper names which have no English form, or are readily recognizable, are used without explanation; *e. g.*, *Coriolanus*, *Washingtonius*.

The exercises have been prepared for use after every third lesson. The subject matter chosen is intentionally largely non-classical, in order that the beginner may realize as early as possible that the Latin language is adapted to the expression of modern as well as ancient thought.

SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING

(To follow Lesson 3)

441. A DIALOGUE

Ubi est tua patria? America mea patria est; estne tua? Nōn est; mea patria Gallia est. Est terra Eurōpae. Pulchrane Gallia est? Pulchra et lāta terra est ubi longae viae sunt. Suntne silvae tuae patriae magnae? Magnae nōn sunt, parvae sunt. Nōnne vīta fēminārum tuae patriae pulchra est? Fēminārum bonārum vīta semper pulchra et bona est.

(To follow Lesson 6)

442. A FAITHFUL SERVANT

Lydus est fidus servus agricolae boni in insulā. Frūmentum dominī et vinum in oppidum portat, ubi cibus incolis superbīs grātus est. Malus nauta et amicus in hortō sunt. Nauta servum vocat. “Cūr vinum, serve, in hortum nōn portās?” Lydus amīcis vinum in pōculō¹ parvō dat. Nauta vinum bonum laudat sed pōculum parvum et inopiam vīni culpat. Pugnant. Lydus nautam et amicum superat.² Servō pecūniam dant, et Lydus, servus fidus, vinum et frūmentum servat.

(To follow Lesson 9)

443. ROMAN CHILDREN

Eurōpae terra Ītalia est. Rōma magnum in Ītaliā oppidum est. Multae portae, bonae et lātae viae, alba aedificia in oppidō sunt. Horti incolārum superbōrum magnī sunt.

¹ *cup.*

² *overcome.*

In hortis Mārci lūdus¹ est. Magister, vir peritus, liberōs convocat. Equi validi parvōs liberōs in hortōs magistrī portant. Cūr malī puerī pugnant? Asperi sunt. Pueri amant bella et proelia et sagittās et gladiōs. Puellās tenerās rosae albae in hortis, nova lūna, parvae stellae dēlectant. Magister malōs et pigrōs discipulōs culpat, sed bonōs (discipulōs) amat. Pulchrōs librōs dōna bonīs puerīs et puellīs dat. In librīs multae fābulae Rōmam oppidum laudant.

(To follow Lesson 12)

444. A ROUGH WOOING

10 Rōma parvum oppidum erat, ubi Rōmulus in terrīs erat. Incolae viri erant, sed fēminae in oppidō nōn erant. Rōmulī lēgātī multōs agricolās et multās fēminās et pulchrās puellās in oppidum convocāvērunt. Tēlis idōneis, pilīs, gladiīs, hastis, incolae pugnābant. Fēminās asperum
15 proelium dēlectābat. Sed Rōmulī cōnsilium malum erat. Viri validi puellās tenerās in aedificia portāvērunt. Tum² superbī agricolae armīs Rōmānōs oppugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus et Rōmulī amīci agricolās superābant. Tum miserae agricolārum filiae parvōs liberōs in proelium portā-
20 vērunt et virōs³ vocāvērunt: "Semper virōs³ et liberōs amābimus. Cūr pugnātis? Nōnne filiās et filiārum liberōs amātis?"

(To follow Lesson 15)

445. HOW TIBERIUS WON A WIFE

Mārcus, dux cōpiārum Rōmānārum, miles peritus erat. In Galliā cum Helvētiīs Rōmānī pugnābant et Mārcus
25 locum hibernis idōneum parāverat. Helvētīi castra Rō-

¹ school.

² then.

³ husbands.

mānōrum oppugnāre mātūrāvērunt et in silvis et agris semper dimicābant. Rōmānōrum periculum magnum erat. Multi in castris equitēs erant, multae et tenerae fēminae, multi et parvi liberī, sed nōn erat cibi cōpia.

Tiberium, fidum lēgātum, Mārcus dux vocat. "Nōne, periculum vidēs? Cōpiae Helvētiōrum magnae sunt et castra expugnābunt. Tulliam, pulchram filiam meā, amās. Nōne caput ferī Helvētiōrum ducis in castra portābis? Tullia tuum praemium erit."

Mox Tiberium cum paucis militibus albi equi ad castra¹⁰ Helvētiōrum portābant. Longa et aspera via erat, sed validi equi et viri erant. Helvētīi magnam praedam, vinum, frūmentum in castra portāverant. Superāverat vinum ducem Helvētiōrum. Magnum in vinō periculum est. Tiberius gladiō ducem oppugnat, et mox ducis caput¹⁵ ad Mārcum portat. Mārcus Tiberium laudat et lēgātō fidō Tulliam, filiam pulchram, dat. Sed Tiberi virtūs militum Rōmānōrum virtūtem auget. Helvētiōs in fugam dant; magnam frūmenti cōpiam et magnam praedam in castra Rōmāna portant.

20

(To follow Lesson 18)

446. THE DEFENSE OF THE BRIDGE

Porsena, rēx Clūsī,¹ hostis Rōmānōrum erat. Multis cōpiis militēs Rōmānōs in fugam dederat et Rōmam urbem oppugnābat. Longus pōns in flūmine Tiberi lātō et altō erat. Valerius pontem occupāre mātūrat, et cum feris hostibus dimicat. Magnā virtūte Rōmāni in ponte²⁵ pugnābant, sed proeliō hostēs cōnsulem superāvērunt. Cōnsul pontem dēlēre² parābat. Tum vir validus, Horātius Cocles, trāns flūmen cum hostibus dimicāvit. Magnum periculum erat, magna caedēs. Multis corporis vulneribus

¹ *Clusium*, a town of Etruria.

² *destroy*.

Horātius labōrābat, sed pedem nōn mōvit et multā nocte hostēs in fugam dedit. Laetī Rōmānī Horātiō lātōs agrōs dedērunt.

(To follow Lesson 21)

447. A STERN FATHER

Brūtus et Valerius cōsulēs Rōmānī erant et cum Tarquiniō¹ rēge pugnābant. Sed malī filiī Brūtī contrā patrem ā Tarquiniō incitābantur. Cum paucis coniūrātis Rōmae imperium Tarquiniō dominō dare parābant. Sed per Brūtī servum fidum, quod periculō terrēbātur, cōsuli nōmina coniūrātōrum nūntiantur.² Ā cōsule filiī
 10 cum coniūrātis in collem Capitōlinum³ magnā cum celeritāte convocantur. Tum Brūtus hominēs superbōs culpat quod contrā urbem armantur. Pater miser filiōrum vītam nōn servāvit. Tum militēs hominēs malōs gladiis necāvērunt. Sed Brūtī, patris fortissimī,⁴ magna virtūs ā
 15 Rōmānis grātis semper laudābitur.

(To follow Lesson 24)

448. THE ROMANS AND THE ELEPHANTS

Pyrrhum, Ēpirī⁵ rēgem, quod fortis vir bonusque imperātor erat, Tarentī⁶ civēs in Ītaliā vocāvērunt. Cum Rōmānis multīs proeliis dīmīcāvit Rōmānōsque superāvit, quod elephantōs⁷ in Ītaliā portāverat, quae animālīa
 20 ad Pyrrhī tempus ā Rōmānis nōn vīsa erant. Sed Rōmānī, virī audācēs, pedēs elephantōrum pilīs vulnerābant magnaque animālīum caedēs fuit. Parī virtūte militēs cum Pyrrhī cōpiīs dīmīcāvērunt. Omnia corpora necātōrum Rōmānōrum vulnera in capitibus habēbant.

¹ *Tarquin.*

² *report.*

³ *Capitoline.*

⁴ *very brave.*

⁵ *Epirus*, a country northwest of Greece.

⁶ *Tarentum*, a Greek city on the southern coast of Italy; now Taranto.

⁷ *elephants.*

(To follow Lesson 27)

449. CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SCHOOL

Carolus¹ Magnus, Francōrum² rēx, imperātorque³ Rōmānus, multōs in patriā lūdōs conlocāvit. Ibi filiī et potentium et reliquōrum litterās⁴ discēbant.⁵ Saepe in lūdō rēx magnus erat, pigrōs discipulōs culpābat, ācrēs laudābat. Sed potentium liberī discere nōn cupiēbant, quod Caroli temporibus ā potentibus bella semper gerēbantur. Pigrōs liberōs rēx in aedificium vocāvit et "Quod primōrum," inquit,⁶ "filiī estis, fidī discipulī nōne eritis? Omnēs mei civēs in lūdō parēs sunt et ad parē cūram ā magistris incitābuntur. Patriae nostrae laudem⁷ augēre cupiō,⁸ quod fortēs mei Franci sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs libris et litteris superantur. Magnā cum celeritāte magnōque cum studiō discētis, quod pigri discipulī nōn servābunt dōna mea meamque amicitiam."

you shall study

(To follow Lesson 30)

450. BRENNUS, THE GALLIC GENERAL, IN ROME

Rōmānī antiquis temporibus cum Gallis, Italīae partis incolis, bellum gerēbant. Dux Gallōrum Brennus erat et Italiam vāstābat. Ad Alliam flūmen Rōmānī cum Gallis contendērunt, sed hostēs Rōmānōs superāvērunt. Tum ad urbem Rōmam contēdēbant. In urbe neque in portis neque in viis hominēs vidērunt, sed aedificia alta et pulchra laudābant. In Forō⁹ sedīlia vidērunt, ubi principēs Rōmānī sedēbant.¹⁰ Gladiis Galli principēs Rōmānōrum necāvērunt. Rōmānī lēgātōs ad Brennum misērunt et pecūniae cōpiam prō libertāte Gallis dedērunt. Sed superbus

¹ Charles.

² the Franks.

³ here emperor.

⁴ letters.

⁵ study.

⁶ said (he).

⁷ praise, reputation.

⁸ wish, desire.

⁹ market place, Forum.

¹⁰ sit.

Gallōrum dux gladium in librā¹ conlocāvit et "Vae² victis!" exclāmāvit.³ Tum Camillus, fortis Rōmānōrum dux, legiōnēs in Forum dūxit et patriam ab hostibus servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 33)

451. SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

Proeliō asperō militēs contendēbant, multaque corpora
5 et vulnerātōrum et interfectōrum hominum in terrā fuērunt.
In quibus erat ūnus ē principibus qui ab omnibus propter
virtutem amābātur. Sed vulnerātus ille et vulnere et siti⁴
labōrābat. Cui amici auxilium dare mātūrāvērunt. Miles
illi aquam⁵ in pōculō portāvit. Tum "Hanc aquam," inquit,
10 "dux Philippe, quam ex flūmine portāvi habēbis. Grāta
miserō hominī aqua erit." Sed Philippus mox militem
vulnerātum vidit qui illam aquam habēre cupiēbat. "Huic
militi hanc aquam dabis," inquit. Nōne hoc pulchrum
factum erat, quod omnēs semper laudābimus?

(To follow Lesson 36)

452. WILLIAM TELL

15 Helvētia⁶ hodiē libera civitās est, sed nōn semper erat.
Temporibus antiquis superbus homō, qui Gesslerus ap-
pellābātur, Helvētiaē imperium habēbat. Is lignum⁷ in
viā cōstituit, in quō pilleum⁸ posuit, omnēsque qui illā viā
iter faciēbant pillei auctōritātem cōgnōscere iussit. Illud
20 sōlus ex incolis Guglielmus⁹ Tellus nōn fēcit. Audivit
Gesslerus et territus est. "Quem ille nōn movēbit?" inquit.
"Alii idem facient. Tōta Helvētia nostrō imperiō liberābi-
tur."

Ab omnibus Tellus, quod sagittārum peritus erat, laudā-

¹ *balance, pair of scales.*

² *woe.*

³ *cry out.*

⁴ *thirst.*

⁵ *water.*

⁶ *Switzerland.*

⁷ *pole.*

⁸ *cap.*

⁹ *William.*

bātur. Quā dē causā Gesslerus malum cōsiliū cēpit. Parvum Tellī puerum in viā conlocārī et mālum¹ in capite pōnī iussit. In mālum Tellius sagittam mittere iussus est. Pater territus id quod Gesslerus iusserat facere parātus nōn erat. Sed malus ille homō ei dixit: “Nōne hoc faciēs?² Si² nōn faciēs, filium tuum interficiam.” Itaque Tellius sagittam mīsīt, quae in mālum vēnit. Clāmōre magnō omnēs quī viderant Tellī factum laudāvērunt. Sed Gesslerus “Cūr alteram cēpisti sagittam?” inquit. “Haec sagitta,” inquit Tellius, “in³ tuam mortem servāta est, quod post¹⁰ puerī mei mortem nūllis moenibus dēfēnsus eris.” Audivit Gesslerus et magnā celeritāte Tellium in vinculis nāve ēripuit. Sed liberātus mox Tellius superbum hominem alterā illā sagittā necāvit Helvētiōsque liberāvit.

(To follow Lesson 39)

453. ARNOLD WINKELRIED

Helvētia Tellī virtūte libera facta erat. Sed incolae,¹⁵ propter pecūniae parvam cōpiam, multōs militēs nōn habebant quī patriam dēfendēbant. Quā dē causā principēs et equitēs, Helvētiae finitimī, terram occupāre incolāsque prō servis habēre cupiēbant. Magnus militum exercitus in Helvētiam missus est. His militibus longae hastae, magnī²⁰ gladii, incolis Helvētiae sagittae et saxa erant. Sed omnibus dē montibus Helvētīi convēnērunt et in hostēs asperōs impetum fēcērunt. Diū pugnātum est, sed hastis longis agricolae ab exercitū prohibēbantur, neque sagittae quās in militēs mittēbant eōs vulnerābant. Et ā dextrō et ā²⁵ sinistrō cornū agricolae hostēs oppugnābant, sed nūllum militem interfēcērunt. Tum ūnus ex illis, cui Arnoldus Winkelriedius nōmen erat, in viam exiit itaque⁴ dixit:

¹ *apple.*

² *if.*

³ *for.*

⁴ *and thus, and so.*

"Trāns illum montem mihi domus cum liberis et uxōre¹ est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vitā patriae meae civibusque meis prō libertāte dabō. Viam libertātī faciam." Tum, nūllis armis armātus, in hastās multās hostium corpus
 5 suum, ūnus prō omnibus, misit. Amīcī fortissimī trāns corpus virī audācis, quod humī erat, impetum magnā cum virtūte fēcērunt. Hostēs hōc ācrī animō territī et in fugam dati sunt. Sed Helvētī per omne futūrum tempus liberī remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedi virtūte, quam omnēs semper
 10 laudābunt, servātī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 42)

454. THE FIRST ERUPTION OF MT. VESUVIUS

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Ītaliae prōvinciā, trium millium pedum altitudīne est. Ex eō et ignis et flūmen saxōrum, quod ā nōbīs "lava" appellātur, saepe in agrōs mittitur. Sed temporibus antiquōrum Rōmānōrum pulcher
 15 mōns erat, sub quō multi et agricolae et mercātōrēs vicos et oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentum, vinum multum in agrīs et in collibus erat, multae in portubus nāvēs. Saepe principēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in hīs oppidīs manēbant et hiemem fugiēbant. Sed haec omnia LXXIX
 20 post Christum annīs, mēse Augustō, cāsū miserō dēlēta sunt. Eō annō Plinius,² Rōmānārum nāvium longārum³ dux, cum Pliniō ālterō, nepōte⁴ suō, Misēnī, quī portus Rōmānus fuit, erat. Ei ēruptiō Vesuvī facta esse nūntiātur. Et ipse vidit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter fūmum.⁵
 25 Itaque nāve ad Vesuvium Plinius vēnit incolisque miseris auxilium parābat. Undique clāmōrem miserum audiēbat hominum quī alii aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et ipse discēdere coāctus est. Sed saxīs illis, dē quibus diximus, in itinere interfectus est.

¹ wife.

² Pliny.

³ nāvis longa, a warship.

⁴ grandson.

⁵ smoke.

Omnēs agrī, omnēs vicī, oppida omnia ēruptiōne incēnsa sunt. Post paucōs diēs nihil in terrā reliquī erat. Saxa omnēs agrōs complēverant. Neque oppida illa tria sub monte conlocāta, Stabiae, Herculāneum, Pompēii, per multōs annōs ab ūllō homine visa sunt. Hodiē autem ei quī in Ītaliā iter faciunt omnēs in Campāniam veniunt. Nam vident in his locis quae ex illis oppidis remanent — portas, vias cum aedificiis suis, templa deōrum. Multae et pulchrae rēs, quae in incolārum domibus fuērunt, servātae sunt multaque dē antiquōrum hominum vitā et fortunā cōgnōscet¹⁰ qui illās rēs viderit.

(To follow Lesson 45)

455. THE TREACHEROUS SCHOOLMASTER

Falerii,¹ Etrūriae oppidum, ā Rōmānis diū obsidēbantur. Sed fortissimī incolae magnā virtūte patriam tūtā ab hostibus servābant. Quōdam diē senex plūrimis cum pueris ex oppidī portā ad castra Rōmāna exiit.¹⁵ Cuius adventum inter castra et oppidum nōbilissimus Rōmānōrum dux, Camillus nōmine, exspectābat. Ille autem ad imperātōrem accessit dixitque: “Lūdī magister in oppidō Faleriis sum. Cārissimōs potentium civium filiōs tuae potestātī permittō. Brevī tempore superbī²⁰ incolae, quī liberōs suōs amant, et ipsi in castra tua pervenient et prō liberōrum libertāte Rōmānis civitātem suam dabunt.” Turpī magistrī cōnsiliō lēnis Camillī animus permōtus est. Puerōs convocāvit eōsque flagellis² malum magistrum pūnire et patrēs suōs dē illius malō animō²⁵ certiōrēs facere iussit. Grātior Faliscis³ Camillī magnitūdō

¹ In Latin, when names of towns that are plural in form are used as subject, the verb is plural; in English the verb is singular, as, Athens was a great city.

² whips.

³ Falisci, the inhabitants of Falerii.

animi quam victōria ipsōrum erat. Itaque pācem cum Rōmānis cōfirmāvērunt reiue pūblica Rōmānae clientēs facti sunt.

(To follow Lesson 48)

456. STORIES OF CAESAR

Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor, dē quō omnēs
5 vōs multa iam audivistis plūraque audiētis, iuvenis iter per
Hispāniam prōvinciam faciēbat. Nocte ad vicum per-
vēnit, ubi ā principe bene receptus est. Superbior ille
omni cive Rōmānō erat, quod in suō vicō plūrimum poterat.
Propter quod Caesaris amīci eum culpābant. Sed Caesar,
10 prūdentissimus vir, dixit: "Superbus princeps nōn est.
Princeps vicī maior est omnibus quī post primum Rōmae
civem sunt."

Idem Caesar cum Pompēiō, duce summō, et cum suis
civibus bellum gessit. Eō tempore in Galliam prōvinciam
15 prō cōsule missus erat. Finis autem prōvinciae et Ītaliae
flūmen minimē¹ lātum erat, quod Rubicō² appellātur.
Cuius flūminis in ripā aciem suam Caesar instrūxit diūque
exspectābat lēgātōrum, quī dē pāce missi erant, adven-
tum. Postea autem, Rubicōnem ubi exercitū trānsiit,
20 "Alea³ iacta est!" exclāmāvit. Ex eō tempore ācritur cum
Pompēiō bellum gessit.

In illō ipsō bellō Pompēius, cuius militēs pares numerō
Caesaris nōn erant, Brundisiō, quod nōmen est portūs
Ītaliae, in Graeciam trānsiit. Caesar ipse mare trānsire
25 cupiēbat. Sed ventus⁴ asperrimus nāvem in aliam partem
ēgit. Nautae territi ad terram sē recipere cupiēbant.
Quibus Caesar, fortissimus vir, respondit: ⁵ "Fortiter faci-
ētis et tūti eritis, quod Caesarem Caesarisque fortūnās por-
tātis."

¹ adverb of *minimus*.

² *Rubicon*.

³ *die*.

⁴ *wind*.

⁵ *answer*.

(To follow Lesson 51)

457. CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

Prīmīs rei pūblicae liberae temporibus Rōmae iuvenis quidam erat, cui Gnaeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat, vir maximā virtūte sed nōn cōnsiliō prūdēns. Hunc, quod superbissimus erat, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exire iussit. Ille autem ad Volscōs exiit, quōs dē antiquā potestāte 5 monuit. Itaque illi cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere mātūrābant, cuius belli imperium Coriolānō dedērunt. Maximā militum multitudīne ad urbem accesserant eamque castris et vāllō obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commisērunt, neque tamen hostēs superāre potuērunt. Sed fēminae 10 Rōmānae ad Veturiam, Coriolāni mātrem, eiusque uxōrem Volumniam convēnērunt. Quae cum Mārci duōbus filiis parvis in hostium castra iērunt, urbem, quam viri dēfendere nōn poterant, lacrimis¹ suis dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō fēminārum agmen accēdere nūntiātur, primō superbissimē 15 eās recēpit. Ubi autem ā sedili suō mātrem vidit, maximē permōtus ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia "Hostisne filius," inquit, "ad mē venit captaque ā militibus mātēr tua in tuis castris sum? Grāta mihi vita esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē patriae tuae hostem, civibus nōn amicum reperiō. Nōne in 20 mē, mātrem tuam, uxōrem, filiōs tuum amōrem dēmōstrābis et cum exercitū tuō in Volscōs redibis atque urbī Rōmānae libertātem reddēs? Nihil turpius, nihil miseriū ego tōtā in vitā vidī nec vidēre poterō."

His mātris verbis² permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra 25 mōvit civitātemque liberā servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus ā Volscis postea interfectus est. Fēminis fortissimis summam laudem Rōmāni dedērunt templumque Fortūnae prō eārum subsidiō in urbe conlocāvērunt.

¹ tears.² words.

(To follow Lesson 54)

458. THE FAITHFUL WIVES OF WEINSBERG

Imperātor quidam Germanus oppidum munitissimum, quod Weinsberg appellatur, quod civēs liberī esse cupiebant, obsidebat. Cottidianis proeliis oppidi incolae cum militibus imperatoris pugnantēs nec vincere poterant nec vinci. At¹ post longum tempus rei frumentariae inopiā oppidum laborabat, quod commeātū omni prohibebatur. Quā de causā litteras ad imperatorem scripserunt, quibus oppidum in eius potestatem dederunt. Ille autem haec de pace constituit. Mulieres omnes exire iussit. "Portabitis ex¹⁰ oppidō," inquit, "vobiscum quae tollere poteritis. Sed virōs omnes occidi iubebō." Diē proximō, signō datō, exeunt ē portā mulieres, quarum quaeque virum suum portabat. Tum miserae feminae se ad imperatoris pedes iaciunt. At¹ ille permotus viris vitam donavit² oppidum-¹⁵ que tutum a militibus asperis servavit.

(To follow Lesson 57)

459. TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Coloni³ Americani, qui regis Britannorum imperia sibi nocere credebant, litteras ad regem mittere constituerunt, quibus summās Britannorum iniurias⁴ demonstrabant. Quas litteras conficere unus ex nobilioribus, Samuel Adams²⁰ nōmine, ab iis iussus est. Filia autem Samueles parva literis visis patri "Spēro," inquit, "brevis tempore litteras regis in manibus futurās esse." Cui pater respondit: "Ego, mea filia, existimō regem superbissimum pedes suos in nostris litteris positurum esse."

²⁵ Militum Britannorum dux, Gagus⁵ nōmine, a colonis frumentum conferri audiverat, quō se potiturum esse sperabat.

¹ but.² give.³ colonists.⁴ wrongs.⁵ Gage.

Erant autem Bostōnī¹ viri patriae amantissimī, quī igne plēbi dēmōnstrātūrī erant Britannum ducem profectum esse. Itaque nocte hī ignēs ā cīvibus vīsi sunt. Inter quōs Paulus Revērius, perītissimus eques, nihil morātus, equum cōnscendit² et maximā celeritāte per vīcōs, iter fēcit Britannōs iam ventūrōs esse vocāns. Sic tandem³ ad oppidum Lexingtōnium pervēnit, ubi et Samuel Adams et Ioannes⁴ Hancock in amicōrum domibus erant. Hōs captōs sēcum redūcere Gagus quam maximē cupiēbat. Sed ā Revēriō monitī militēs Britannōs fūgērunt. 10

Fortissimī erant militēs Americānī, sed ducibus male pārēbant. Centuriō⁵ quīdam ūnum ex suis militibus aquam in castra portāre iussisse dicitur. Cui ille superbē respondit: "Ego nōn portābō, quod complūra iam pōcula portāvī. Quā rē tū tibi ipse hodiē illam comparābis." 15 Nec meliōre ipsī centuriōnēs animō erant. Washingtōnius arborem⁶ maximam militēs quōsdam magnō labōre moventēs vidit et eis centuriōnem auxilium ferre iussit. Ille autem "Num mē centuriōnem," inquit, "esse tū scīs?"

(To follow Lesson 60)

460. MORE TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Multi inter Americānōs Washingtōniō, maximō duci, tam 20 inimicī erant ut ei imperium ēripere cōnārentur. Quae omnia fortissimō animō ille tulit. Cīvis quīdam aliquem in silvā sē moventem audivisse dicitur. Summā cum diligentīā accessit ut causam cōgnōsceret. Quid autem eum vidisse arbitrāminī? Washingtōnius humī Deum multīs 25 cum lacrimīs rogābat ut patriam auxiliō servāret. Cōnspectū permōtus, cīvis rediit neque ab illō vīsus est. Post multōs annōs, rē nūntiātā, crēdidisse sē dixit virum tam bonum Deō persuādere dēbuisse.

¹ locative, at Boston. ² mount. ³ at length. ⁴ John. ⁵ captain. ⁶ tree.

Philadelphiae¹ exercitus Britannōrum in hibernis erat. Illō tempore Howius,² exercitūs dux, ut cōpiās Washing-
tōnī, quae praesidiō finitimīs castris erant, pelleret cōnsi-
lium cēpit. Semper autem eius cōnsiliis duci Americānō
5 nūntiātis nē ea perficeret impeditus est. Itaque multā
nocte lēgātī et dux domum mulieris cuiusdam, Lydiae
Darrah nōmine, convēnerunt. Nē cōnsilia audirentur eam
cum omnibus suis in domūs superiōrem partem ire coēgit.
Ipse in parte inferiōre lēgātōs imperiis suis summā cum
10 diligentiā pārere iussit. Lydia autem, ut omnia quae
dicēbantur audiret, ad ōstium³ accesserat. Ubi lēgātī do-
mum reliquērunt, eam nihil dē cōnsiliis scire crēdentēs,
virō sē ad vicum quendam profectūram esse dixit ut
rem frūmentāriam suis comparāret. Quem in vicum ubi
15 vēnit, centuriōnī Americānō ea quae audiverat nūntiāvit
ita ut Washingtonius dē periculō monitus exercitui Bri-
tannōrum fortiter resistere posset. Neque quisquam quae
Lydia tam fortiter fēcerat ante belli finem audivit.

In proeliō quōdam ad Cowpens vicum factō Tarletōnius,
20 lēgātus Britannōrum, qui dux exercitūs erat, ā Guglielmō
Washingtoniō, lēgātō Americānō, vulnerātus est. Postea
mulieri cuidam Washingtonium tam ferum esse dixit ut
nōmen suum scribere nōn sciret. Cui illa vulnus dēmōns-
trāns "At optimē," inquit, "suum signum facere scit."
25 Illis autem temporibus ei qui scribere nōn sciēbant signum
prō nōmine faciēbant.

(To follow Lesson 63)

461. THE BURNT HAND

Porsena, Etruscōrum rēx, magnō cum exercitū Rōmam
urbem obsidēbat. Magnus Rōmānōrum timor erat, quod

¹ locative.

² Howe.

³ door (of house or room).

frūmentum nōn multum in urbe erat. Patriam tamen hostibus trādere nōlēbant. Quā dē causā iuvenēs quidam bellum cōficere cōstituērunt ūnumque ex suō numerō qui rēgem gladiō necāret misērunt. Agricolam sē esse simulāns¹ Mūcius in Etruscōrum castra profectus rēgem petivit. Rogāre autem quis rēx esset nōluit, nē hostēs Rōmānum sē esse cōgnōscerent, sed nōbilem quendam pulcherrimē armātum prō rēge interfēcit. Captus et ad rēgem ductus est. Rogātus quis esset aut cūr ūnum ē rēgis lēgātis interfēcisset, "Rōmānus sum," inquit, "quī patriae meae hostem necāre volui." Quae ubi rēx audivit, ut igni cremārētur imperāvit. Sed nōn territus prōcessit Rōmānus et dextrā manū in igni positā, "Ignem tuum," inquit, "minimē vereor. Plūrimī mihi sunt socii, quī tē interficient, nisi in Etrūriam redibis." Quibus verbis¹⁵ superbissimis auditis Porsena iuvenī libertātem dōnāvit, magnō cīvis Rōmānī animō maximē permōtus. Rōmam ille rediit, et postea ā plēbe Scaevola vocābātur, quod est, is quī manum sōlam sinistram habet.

(To follow Lesson 66)

462. FOLLOW THE FLAG

Cum ē Galliā Caesar in Britanniam dē tertiā vigiliā profectus esset, proximō diē in cōspectum terrae Britannicae vēnit. Ibi hostēs sē ad mare expectantēs vidit. Tantaе autem magnitudinis nāvēs Rōmānae erant ut terrae appropinquāre nōn possent. Quā rē territī hostiumque tēla veritī militēs Rōmānī nōn eādē quā solēbant² virtūte in²⁵ proeliō utēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit, militēs ē nāvibus ad terram per mare accēdere iussit. Cum militēs, novam rem timentēs, quae imperāverat facere nōllent, is quī decimae legiōnis signum ferēbat, postquam deōs ut sibi

¹ *pretending.*

² *be accustomed.*

praesidiō essent rogāvit, “Mē,” inquit, “sequēminī, milites, nisi vultis signum nostrum in hostium manibus esse. Ego quae ab imperātōre iussus sum faciam.” Haec cum dixisset, ē nāve per mare in hostēs signum ferre coepit. Tum
5 Rōmānī cohortāti inter sē, nē illum in hostium potestāte relinquerent, signum secūti in Britannōs impetum fēcērunt. Ācrit̄er ab utrisque pugnātum est. Rōmānis tamen arma multum prōderant, ita ut summā vī pignantēs hostēs in fugam darent.

(To follow Lesson 69)

463. TWO BRAVE RIVALS

10 Caesar ē Britannīā in Galliam reversus Cicerōnem lēgātum suum hibernis praefēcit. Ipse in Italiam profectus est. Galli autem absente Rōmānōrum imperātōre libertāte suā iterum potiri cōnāti sunt. Cum castra Rōmāna plūrimis cōpiis circumvēnissent, tantā vī in ea impetum
15 fēcērunt ut ad multam noctem pugnārētur, neque tamen Rōmānōrum castra expugnāre potuerunt. Erant in exercitū duo viri fortissimī, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. Hī inter sē omnibus annis dē ordine contendēbant. E quibus Pullō, cum ācerrimē prō castris pugnārētur, “Quid,
20 Vorēne,” inquit, “expectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrā virtūte iūdicābit.”¹ Haec cum dixisset, ē castris prōcessit et, ubi plūrimī hostēs vidēbantur, ibi dīmīcāvit. Neque Vorēnus sē castris tenuit, sed nē timēre vidērētur veritus illum secūsus est. Pilum Pullō in hostēs mittit atque ūnum ex illis
25 interficit. Omnēs autem hostēs tēlis in Pullōnem missis prōgredi eum prohibuērunt. Gladiō ūti cōnantem circumveniunt vulnerantque. Sed illi auxiliō Vorēnus adest, in quem hostēs sē convertunt. Gladiō Vorēnus sē dēfendit et ūnō ex hostibus interfectō reliquōs in fugam dat. Sed iterum

¹ *decide.*

ā Gallis circumventus cadit. Huic subsidium fert Pullō tam fortiter ut uterque complūribus hostibus interfectis summō cum clāmōre militum sē in castra recēperit. Sic fortūnā factum est ut inimicī alter alterī auxiliō essent.

(To follow Lesson 72)

464. IN LIGHTER VEIN

Ennius, vetus Rōmānus poēta,¹ Scīpiōnī, summō Rōmā-
nōrum ducī, amicissimus erat. Quōdam autem diē Scīpiō Ennī ad domum cum vēnisset, ut cum poētā conloquerētur, servus quī ōstium servābat "Dominus," inquit, "meus abest." Vīsus tamen erat Ennius ā Scīpiōne, in domūs superiōre parte sē tenēns. Post paucōs diēs Ennius Scīpi-
ōnis ad domum vēnit. Cui ille accēdentī "Domī," inquit, "ego nōn sum." Tum Ennius "Ego autem tē et videō et audiō." "Quid?" Scīpiō respondit, "ego servō tuō crēdidī: tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdēs?"

Lincolnius, nōbilissimus optimusque vir, per bellum¹⁵ illud quod cīvēs nostrī alterī cum alterīs gessērunt, civitātī praeerat. Is fābulis saepe ūtēbātur, ut eīs quī ad sē veniēbant persuādēret. Cum plūrimī ab eō ut aliquid sibi daret rogārent, saepe quid respondēret nōn habuit. Dēnique tamen morbō² quōdam labōrābat, quī ā nobis²⁰ "variola"³ appellātur. Tum medicō⁴ ille "Laetus," inquit, "sum, quod tandem habeō quod ūnī cuique dare possim quī habēre cupiat."

Centuriō quidam, quī ante bellī finem ab exercitū discēdere volēbat, hoc nē faceret ā Shermānō duce impeditus est.²⁵ Cum pārere nōllet, Shermānus illi "Nisi tū," inquit, "in castra redieris, tē interfici iubēbō." Post paucōs diēs cum Lincolnius ad exercitum vēnisset, centuriō ad eum vēnit dixitque: "Lēgātus mē discēderē nōluit et, nisi ad legiōnem

¹ poet. ² illness. ³ varioloid (a mild form of smallpox). ⁴ physician.

rediissem, mē interfici iussisset.” Lincolnius et ad lēgātum et ad centuriōnem sē convertit, tum illi “Scīsne,” inquit, “quid ego putem? Si Shermānus sē mē interfectūrum esse dixisset, celeriter id quod vult facerem. Crēdō eum id facere et velle et posse.”

(To follow Lesson 75)

465. AN EXAMPLE OF ROMAN FORTITUDE

Summa omnibus temporibus Rōmānōrum virtūs fuit, ita ut fortissimus quisque semper maximē ab iis laudātus sit. Inter multa alia nōbilissimum Rēguli factum semper erit. Is bellō Pūnicō primō Carthāginiēnsēs terrā marique
 10 vicerat, sed tandem proeliō superātus ab illis in vincula coniectus est. Cum pācem cum Rōmānis Carthāginiēnsēs cōfirmāre vellent, Rēgulum Rōmam misērunt, ut dē pāce cōfirmandā civēs certiōrēs faceret. Postulāvērunt autem ut sibi pollicērētur sē, si Rōmānis persuādere
 15 nōn posset, in Āfricam reversūrum esse. Rōmam profectus Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, sed patrēs cohortātus est nē pācem cōfirmārent. Haec sunt quae illis dixit: “Utinam nē ad vōs venire coāctus essem! Rēs mihi turpissima vidēbātur cum nostrōs vīdī ab hostibus manibus
 20 vinctis in urbem dūcī. Num spērātis eōs fortiōrēs futūrōs esse, sī pecūniā datā libertātem recēperint? Mortem mihi huius cōnsili praemium exspectandam esse ego sciō. Sed utinam plūrēs mihi vitae essent, ut omnēs patriae prō victōriā darem. Morte meā incitāti, civēs, bellum fortis-
 25 tissimē gerite.” Itaque senātui persuāsit. Cum autem amici nē in Āfricam in vincula rediret postulārent, vir fortissimus pārere nōluit. Carthāginem rediit, ubi ā Carthāginiēnsibus interfectus est. Sed eius morte Rōmāni quam maximē incitāti Carthāginiēnsēs vicērunt. Utinam nostra
 30 patria semper in suis finibus tantae virtūtis virōs habeat!

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES¹ FROM ROMAN HISTORY

466. EARLY BOYHOOD OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnum reliquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō² frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius filiā, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae³ tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula⁵ coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs⁴ abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super ripās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō reliquit. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitūdinēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītum accurrit, mātremque⁶ sē gessit.

10

Cum lupa saepius⁶ ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adulti⁷ deinde hī inter pāstōrēs primō lūdicrīs⁸ certāminibus vīrēs⁹ auxērunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā 15

¹ These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. ² *pulsō (pellō) frātre*, abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother*. ³ *but she*. ⁴ See 311, 7. *impositōs abiēcit*: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, *imposuit et abiēcit*. ⁵ *mātremque sē gessit, acted like a mother*. ⁶ *very often*. ⁷ *adulti (adolēscō)*, *when grown (literally, having grown)*. ⁸ *lūdicrīs certāminibus*, *with playful contests*. ⁹ From *vīs*; do not confuse with *vir, viri*.

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset¹ eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātis pāstōribus Albam² pro-
5 perāvit.

467. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxē-
runt, eum accūsantēs quasi³ Numitōris agrōs infēstāre
solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad suppli-
cium trāditus est; at Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōn-
10 siderāns, haud⁴ procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret.
Nam Remus ōris lineāmentīs⁵ erat mātī simillimus aetās-
que expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum
Numitōris animum anxium tenet,⁶ repente Rōmulus su-
pervenit, frātre liberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum
15 restituit.⁷

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iisdem locīs, ubi
expositi ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt⁸; sed ortā inter
eōs contentiōne, uter⁹ nōmen novae urbī daret¹⁰ eamque
regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt¹¹ adhibēre. Remus prior sex
20 vulturēs, Rōmulus postea duodecim vidit. Sic Rōmulus,
victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis
tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius¹² angustias
inrīdēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum irātus¹³ Rō-
mulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbis: "Sic¹⁴ deinde, quī-
25 cumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea!" Ita sōlus potitus
est imperiō¹⁵ Rōmulus.

¹ For mood and tense, see 369-374. ² See 237. ³ on the ground that.
⁴ haud . . . āgnōsceret, came very near recognizing his grandson. ⁵ See 157.
⁶ dum, while, regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the imper-
fect; translate "was keeping." ⁷ restituo. ⁸ condō. ⁹ as to which of the
two. ¹⁰ Why subjunctive? ¹¹ dēcernō. ¹² its. ¹³ in anger. ¹⁴ Supply pereat,
let him perish, or some similar verb. ¹⁵ For case, see 337.

468. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in ¹ proximō lūcus; hunc asyllum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs ² latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsīt, quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent.³ Nusquam benignē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asyllum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret ⁴ cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indicī ⁵ deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī ¹⁰ convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbis, maximē Sabīnī cum liberīs et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque ⁶ conversae mentēs ⁷ cum oculīs erant, tum signō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.⁸

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs ¹⁵ raptās ⁹ bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,¹⁰ quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ¹¹ ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī ¹² exercitum suum ²⁰ in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiit quod Sabīnī in sinistris manibus gererent,¹³ videlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

¹ in proximō, near by. ² number. ³ See 364. ⁴ = esset, would be. ⁵ Pres. pass. infin. of indicō, to be announced. ⁶ eō = in spectāculum. ⁷ mentēs cum oculīs, minds and eyes alike (literally, minds with eyes). ⁸ The connective, et, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. ⁹ ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (literally, on account of the seized maidens). ¹⁰ nancīscor. ¹¹ Supine to denote purpose; see 435. ¹² sī . . . perdūxisset, if she would lead. ¹³ wore.

dūxit, ubi Tatiū scūtīs eam¹ obruī iussit; nam et² ea in laevis habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

469. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi
5 nunc Forum Rōmānum est pugnam cōseruit. Primō
impetū vir inter Rōmānōs insignis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmīcāns³ cecidit⁴; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vicimus perfidōs hospitēs,⁵ imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē⁶ aliud esse virginēs
10 rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitit.⁷ Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre et, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs
ōrantēs,⁸ pācem conciliāvērunt.

15 Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm haud ita multō post, occīsō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex senīōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. His ita ōrdinātīs, cum ad⁹ exercitum
20 lūstrandum cōtiōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.¹⁰ Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est.¹¹ Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō¹² cōstitutā, ipse prō deō cultus¹³ et Quirīnus est
25 appellātus.

¹ eam obruī iussit, ordered her to be buried. ² et ea, these also. ³ while fighting. ⁴ cadō. ⁵ hosts. ⁶ longē aliud esse . . . aliud, that it is one thing . . . quite another. ⁷ resistō, held its ground. ⁸ by beseeching. ⁹ See 406, 3. ¹⁰ auferō. ¹¹ crēditus est, he was believed. ¹² in honor of Romulus. ¹³ colō.

470. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

(716-673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā¹ et religiōne. Is Curibus,² ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accitus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populū ferū religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima instituit. Āram Vestae cōsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum³ virginibus dedit. Flāminem⁴ Iovis sacerdotem creāvit eumque insignī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmissis, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrīs fulmina essent⁵ prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī¹⁰ certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsīt. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs⁶ rēgiās convēnerunt silentēsque exspectābant quid futurum esset. Atque sōle ortō⁷ dēlābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferri¹⁵ posset, Māmuriū fabrum ūndecim scūta eādē fōrmā⁸ fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdotēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdīrent.

471. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscrīpsit; nefāstōs⁹ fāstōsque diēs fēcīt; portās²⁰ Iānō¹⁰ geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam

¹ For case, see 303. ² Curibus . . . Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines; why is the prep. omitted with Curibus? ³ to be kept. ⁴ Flāminem . . . creāvit, he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter. ⁵ essent prōcūranda, should be taken care of (i.e. averted). ⁶ aedēs rēgiās, the palace. ⁷ sōle ortō (orior), at sunrise. ⁸ eādē fōrmā: see 303. ⁹ nefāstōs . . . fēcīt, he made a distinction between sacred days and business days. ¹⁰ Iānō geminō, in honor of two-headed Janus.

apertus,¹ in armīs esse cīvitatē, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, significābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem īnstitūtis suis auctōritatē conciliāret, simulāvit sibi² cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque³ monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem⁴ medium fōns perennī⁵ rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitris sē inferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā⁶ pietāte imbuīt, ut fidēs ac iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus⁷ est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitatē auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trigintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

472. MUCIUS SCAEVOLE

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam⁸ trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte⁹ cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope tribūnāl cōstitit.¹⁰ Stipendium tunc forte mīlitibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occidit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus¹¹ dextram accēnsō¹² ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manūm pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

¹ Agrees with *Iānus* understood, subject of *significābat*, when opened.

² *sibi esse*, that he had: why is *sibi* dative? ³ *eiusque monitū*, at her suggestion.

⁴ *quem medium*, the middle of which. ⁵ *perennī aquā*: see 303.

⁶ *eā pietāte*, with such piety. ⁷ *sepeliō*. ⁸ *veniam trānsfugiendī*, permission to go over (to the enemy). ⁹ *privilege*. ¹⁰ *cōnsistō*. ¹¹ *pertrahō*.

¹² *accēnsō foculō*, in a brazier that was burning.

set. Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī¹ similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptis obsidibus dēposuit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statua quoque eī honōris grātiā cōstitutā est.

473. PUBLIUS DECIUS

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeriō² Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōsulis, tribūnus militum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angustis Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēditum collem cōspēxit imminentem hostium castris. Acceptō praesidiō verticem³ 10 occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōsulī spatium dedit ad subdūcendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem insēderat undique armātis circumdatō, intempestā nocte per⁴ mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis⁵ ēvāsit. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est coronā cīvica, quae 15 dabātur eī qui⁶ cīvēs in bellō servāset. Cōsul fuit bellō Latinō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum⁷ utrīque cōsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,⁸ utrīus cornū⁹ in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvovēret. 20 Inclīnante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus dēvōvit. Armātus in equum insiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs immisit; corruit obrutus tēlis et victōriam suis reliquit.

¹ Refers to Mūcius. ² Valeriō . . . cōsulis, *in the consulship of*, etc., abl. absolute; see 316. ³ the summit of the hill. ⁴ per . . . cūstōdiās, *through the midst of the enemy's pickets*. ⁵ safely. ⁶ one who. ⁷ cum . . . obvēnisset; *when the two consuls had dreamed* (literally, *when it had come to each of the two consuls by a dream*). ⁸ ut . . . dēvovēret is subject of convēnit; translate "*it was agreed among them that he whose (utrīus), etc., should,*" etc. ⁹ Nominative.

474. GAIUS DUILIUS

(260 B.C.)

I. Gāius Duīlius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus¹ dēvīcit. Quī cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vėlōcitatē superārī, manūs² ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae
 5 manūs² ubi hostilem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānscrediēbātur Rōmānus³ et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dīmīcābant, unde⁴ Rōmānīs, quī rōbore prae-stābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnātae nāvēs Pūnicae trīgintā, mersae⁵ tredecim.

10 Duīlius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātiōr fuit, quod invicti⁶ terrā iam etiam mari plūrimum⁷ possent. Itaque Duiliō⁸ concessum est ut per omnem vitam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tībicine ā cēnā rediret.

15 II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicae, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmīttēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Veritus autem nē in patriā classis⁹ āmissae poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā āvertit, nam ex illā infēlicī pugnā priusquam clādis nūntius domum pervenīret
 20 quendam ex amīcīs Carthāginem mīsit. Quī postquam cūriam intrāvit, "Cōnsulit"¹⁰ inquit "vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum magnīs cōpiīs maritimīs īnstrūctīs advēnerit, num cum eō cōnfligere dēbeat?" Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn¹¹ cōnfligī oportē-

¹ prīmus dēvīcit, was the first to conquer. ² manūs ferreās, grappling irons. ³ the Romans, a collective noun. ⁴ and as a consequence.

⁵ mergō. ⁶ invicti terrā, victorious on land. ⁷ plūrimum possent, they were supreme. ⁸ Duiliō concessum est ut, etc., Duilius was allowed to, etc.

⁹ classis āmissae, for losing the fleet. ¹⁰ Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num, asks your advice as to whether. ¹¹ that.

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflīxit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuērunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fierī dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sic Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbātur.

5

475. APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritātis, cōsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōsilia palam reprehendēbat sēque, quō¹ diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōfectūrum esse iactitābat. Quī cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia² habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāsset,¹⁰ pullōs nōn exīre ē caveā neque vēscī, inrīdēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse³ nōllent. Ea rēs cum, quasi⁴ irātis diīs, milītēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānīs accepta est: octō eōrum millia caesa sunt,¹⁵ vīgintī millia capta. Quā rē Claudius postea ā populō condemnātus est damnātiōnisque ignōminiam voluntariā morte praevēnit. Ea rēs calamitātī⁵ fuit etiam Claudiae,⁶ cōsulis sorōrī: quae ā lūdīs publicīs revertēns in cōnfertā multitudīne aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit²⁰ ut frāter suus Pulcher revivisceret atque iterum classem āmitteret, quō⁶ minor turba Rōmae foret.⁷ Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque⁸ eī dicta est multa.

¹ quō diē, on the same day that. ² auspicia habēret, was consulting the auspices. ³ Infinitive of edō, to eat. ⁴ quasi irātis diīs, because (as they thought) the gods were angry. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ quō, so that. ⁷ = esset.

⁸ gravisque . . . multa, and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

476. THE BELGAE FORM A CONFEDERACY AGAINST THE ROMANS

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hibernis est,¹ omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter² sē dabant. Coniūrandi³ hae erant causae: primum nōlēbant⁴ nostrum exercitum ad sē⁵ addūci,⁶ deinde ab nōnnullis Gallis sollicitābantur. Hī populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnūlli mōbilitāte et levitāte animi novis⁷ imperiis studēbant. Ab nōnnūllis etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iis quī condūcere hominēs poterant⁸ vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem⁹ imperiō¹⁰ nostrō cōsequi poterant.

CHAPTER II

477. CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST THE BELGAE

Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus est Caesar. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre¹¹ Galliā novās cōscripsit.¹² In interiōrem¹³ Galliam cum hīs legiōnibus Quīntum Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse paucis post¹⁴ diēbus ad exercitum vēnit. Senonēs, quī finitimī Belgis erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant manum cōgī et exercitum Belgārum in ūnum locum condūci. Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficisci.¹⁵

¹ was. ² inter sē, one another (literally, between themselves). ³ of conspiring. ⁴ From nōlō. ⁵ them. ⁶ Present passive infinitive, to be led.

⁷ novis imperiis, revolution. ⁸ Imperfect of possum. ⁹ eam rem . . . cōsequi, to do this. ¹⁰ imperiō nostrō, under our rule. ¹¹ See map of Gaul, page 10. ¹² From cōscribō. ¹³ the interior of. ¹⁴ afterwards. ¹⁵ to set out.

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

478. THE REMI IMMEDIATELY SUBMIT TO CAESAR

Eō¹ dē imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, quī “Nōs” inquirunt “omnia in fīdem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidīs³ recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.⁴ Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, neque potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōsentire.⁵”

CHAPTER IV

479. CAESAR LEARNS FROM THE REMI THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY'S FORCES

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sic reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs, propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs⁶ Cimbrisque intrā finēs suōs ingredi⁷ prohibītīs eārum rērum⁸ memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē militārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia⁹ sē habēre

¹ *there, i.e. ad finēs Belgārum.* ² *ex Belgīs, of the Belgae.* ³ *oppidīs recipere = in oppida recipere.* ⁴ *From coniungō.* ⁵ *from conspiring.* ⁶ *Teutonīs . . . prohibītīs, abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause.* ⁷ *from entering.* ⁸ *deeds; refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri.* ⁹ *omnia explōrāta, full information.*

explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō posse; hōs posse cōficere armāta millia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. 5 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad² hunc propter iūstitiam prūdētiāque tōtīus bellī summam omnium voluntāte dēferri.

CHAPTER V

480. CAESAR RECEIVES HOSTAGES FROM THE REMI AND
ENCAMPS ON THE BANKS OF THE AXONA

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē con-
10 venīre principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīlīgenter ad³ diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut manūs hostium distineantur. Id fierī potest, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁴ et eōrum 15 agrōs populārī coeperint. His mandātīs eum ab sē dīmīttit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vīdit, flūmen Axonam exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae⁵ rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat 20 et quae⁶ post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

¹ Ablative of time within which. Why is *memoriā*, 479, line 18, ablative?
² *on.* ³ *ad diem*, to the very day. ⁴ Future perfect indicative. ⁵ *Quae rēs*,
this position, i.e. crossing the river. ⁶ *quae . . . essent*, the rear.

CHAPTER VI

481. THE BELGAE LAY SIEGE TO BIBRAX, A TOWN OF THE REMI

Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum¹ est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circum-
iectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus² undīque in;
mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōri-
bus nūdātus est, testūdīne³ factā portās succēdunt mūrum-
que subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta
multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī
potestās erat nulli.⁴ Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset,¹⁰
Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium ad Cae-
sarem mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius
sustinēre nōn posse.⁵

CHAPTER VII

482. THE BELGAE ABANDON THE SIEGE OF BIBRAX

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem⁶ ducibus ūsus⁷ quī
nūntiū ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et
funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānis mittit; quōrum
adventū hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque
paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dē-
populatī, multis vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, ad castra Cae-
sarī omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab⁹ millibus passuum²⁰

¹ sustentātum est, *the attack was sustained* (literally, *it was sustained*).

² Dative, governed by circumiectā. ³ This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. ⁴ Dative of possession. ⁵ Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in nūntium mittit. ⁶ isdem ducibus, *the same persons as guides*. ⁷ using. ⁸ For construction, see 294, 295. ⁹ An adverb, away, off.

minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut¹ fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

CHAPTER VIII

483. DESCRIPTION OF CAESAR'S CAMP. HE AWAITS THE ATTACK OF THE BELGAE

Caesar propter multitudinem hostium et propter opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit, cottidie tamen equestribus proeliis quid² hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent periclitabatur.³ Nostris non esse inferiores intellexit. Locus pro castris ad aciem instruendam erat natura idoneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum⁴ adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat. Ab⁵ utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum et ad⁶ extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta conlocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes ab⁵ lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus quas proximae conscripserat in castris relictis, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas⁷ instruxerant.

CHAPTER IX

484. THE BELGAE TRY TO CROSS THE AXONA

20 Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes expectabant⁸;

¹ as; ut with the indicative means "as" or "when." ² quid . . . posset, what the enemy could do by their valor. ³ he tried to ascertain. ⁴ tantum patebat quantum loci, spread over as much space as. ⁵ on. ⁶ ad extremas fossas, at the ends of the trenches. ⁷ See 311, 7. ⁸ were waiting to see.

nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut¹ impedītōs aggredierentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs, prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus³ potu-¹⁰ issent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁴ commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.⁴

CHAPTER X

485. THE BELGAE ARE DEFEATED IN THE BATTLE THAT FOLLOWS

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impedītōs in flūmine aggressī¹, magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlorum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs² interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē³ expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt², neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem⁷ prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

¹ ut . . . aggredierentur, *to attack*, depending upon parātī erant. ² secundiōre . . . nostrīs, abl. absolute; *since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men.* ³ not. ⁴ These subjunctives also express the purpose of trādūcere cōnātī sunt. ⁵ See 311, 7. ⁶ dē . . . spem sē fefellisse, *that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . .* (literally, *that hope had failed them about . . .*). ⁷ unfavorable.

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum¹ esse domum suam quemque revertī ad suōs finēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam
 5 sententiam haec ratiō² eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs³ persuādēri ut diūtiūs morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

486. THE ROMANS PURSUE THE BELGAE AS THEY
DISPERSE

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac
 10 tumultū castrīs ēgressī nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō fēcērunt⁴ ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā⁵ dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce, cōn-
 15 fīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,⁶ praemisit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa millia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt.
 20 Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum⁷ fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut⁸ erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

¹ optimum esse, *that it was best.* ² consideration. ³ Hīs persuādēri nōn poterat, *these could not be persuaded* (literally, *it could not be persuaded these*). ⁴ fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.* ⁵ quā dē causā, *why.* ⁶ See 364. ⁷ quantum . . . spatium, *as the length of the day allowed.* ⁸ as.

CHAPTER XII

487. CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST THE SUESSIONES, AND CAPTURES THE TOWN NOVIODUNUM

Postridīe eius diēi Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrique altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vineīs¹ ad oppidum āctis,² aggere³ iactō, turribusque cōstitutīs, magnitudine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti Suessiōnēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus⁴ Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

10

CHAPTER XIII

488. THE BELLOVACI ALSO SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs¹ maiōrēs² nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs³ manibus⁴ suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

¹ Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. ² moved, from agō. ³ The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. ⁴ petentibus Rēmīs, at the request of the Remi, abl. absolute. ⁵ For comparison, see 272. ⁶ pandō.

CHAPTER XIV

489. DIVICIACUS SPEAKS IN BEHALF OF THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Diviciācus facit verba : Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse : impulsōs ab suis principibus ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōnsili principēs¹ fuissent,² 5 quod³ intellegerent² quantam calamitatem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod⁴ sī fēcerit,² Haedūorū auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, 10 quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī⁵ qua bella inciderint,² sustentāre cōsuērint.²

CHAPTER XV

490. CAESAR'S REPLY. DESCRIPTION OF THE NERVII

Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haedūorū causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit ; quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritatē⁶ atque hominum 15 multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat : 20 nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus⁷ ; patī nihil vinī⁸ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferrī : esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī⁹ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

¹ authors. ² For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427. — cōnsuērint = cōsuēverint. ³ because. ⁴ Quod . . . fēcerit, if he should do this.

⁵ sī . . . inciderint, whatever wars occurred. ⁶ For construction, see 303.

⁷ See 231. ⁸ See 251. ⁹ because.

sent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllā condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

491. THE NERVII AWAIT THE APPROACH OF CAESAR

Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīdūm iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius mīllia passuum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervii cōsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre unā¹ cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, fīnitimīs suis; exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque² per aetātem³ ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conīcisse quō⁴ propter palūdēs exercitui⁵ aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

492. THE NERVII PLAN TO TAKE CAESAR BY SURPRISE

Hīs rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī unā⁶ iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nervii pervēnērunt. Hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās⁷ legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam⁸ negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque dīreptis futurum⁹ ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Nervii autem antiquitus, quō¹⁰ facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent,

¹ unā cum, along with. ² and those who. ³ Do not confuse this word with aestās, -ātis. ⁴ where. ⁵ Dative of possession, 231. ⁶ along with him. ⁷ inter singulās legiōnēs, between each two legions. ⁸ quicquam negōtī, any trouble. ⁹ futurum ut, the result would be that. ¹⁰ quō facilius, that they might the more easily.

fēcerant saepēs¹ quae instar mūrī mūnimenta praeberent. Hīs rēbus iter agminis nostrī impeditum² irī Nervii existimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

493. DESCRIPTION OF THE ROMAN CAMPING GROUND

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus³ apertus, ab⁴ superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in
10 occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum⁵ flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

494. THE NERVII CARRY OUT THEIR PLAN OF ATTACK

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs. Sed quod ad hostēs appropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā
15 Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque⁶ impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī, cum hostium
20 equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs⁷ insequi nōn audēbant.

¹ *Hedges*, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and briars to grow among them. ² *impeditum irī*; future passive infinitive.

³ *at the foot*. ⁴ *ab superiōre parte*, in the upper part. ⁵ *along*. ⁶ See 294, 295. ⁷ Agrees with *hostēs* understood.

Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere¹ dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī cele-
ritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus² nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritātē adversō³ colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

10

CHAPTER XX

495. QUICK WORK BY CAESAR. SPLENDID DISCIPLINE
OF THE TROOPS

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda⁴: vēxillum prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab operē revocandī milītēs, aciēs instruenda, milītēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae
rēs erant subsidiō⁵ — scientia⁶ atque ūsus⁶ milītum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī⁷ sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque⁸ legiōnibus singulōs⁹ lēgātōs Caesar dis-
cēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnqui-
tātem et celeritātem hostium nihil¹⁰ iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae¹¹ vidēbantur administrābant.

¹ opere dīmēnsō, *after laying out the work*. Dīmēnsō from dīmētiōr.
² in manibus nostrīs, *close upon us*. ³ adversō colle, *up the hill*. ⁴ See 438, 439. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ in apposition with rēs. ⁷ ipsī sibi praescribere . . . poterant, *they could direct themselves on their own responsibility (ipsi)*. ⁸ his (respective). ⁹ each. ¹⁰ not . . . at all. ¹¹ quae vidēbantur, *whatever seemed best*.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

496. FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

| | SINGULAR | CASE ENDINGS | PLURAL | CASE ENDINGS |
|------|----------|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| NOM. | stella | -a | stellae | -ae |
| GEN. | stellae | -ae | stellārum | -ārum |
| DAT. | stellae | -ae | stellis | -is |
| ACC. | stellam | -am | stellās | -ās |
| ABL. | stellā | -ā | stellis | -is |

497. SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-

SINGULAR

| | MASC. | CASE ENDINGS | NEUT. | CASE ENDINGS |
|------|--------|--------------|-------|--------------|
| NOM. | hortus | -us | dōnum | -um |
| GEN. | horti | -i | dōni | -i |
| DAT. | hortō | -ō | dōnō | -ō |
| ACC. | hortum | -um | dōnum | -um |
| ABL. | hortō | -ō | dōnō | -ō |

PLURAL

| | | | | |
|------|----------|-------|---------|-------|
| NOM. | horti | -i | dōna | -a |
| GEN. | hortōrum | -ōrum | dōnōrum | -ōrum |
| DAT. | hortis | -is | dōnis | -is |
| ACC. | hortōs | -ōs | dōna | -a |
| ABL. | hortis | -is | dōnis | -is |

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **horte**.

SINGULAR

| | | | | |
|------|--------|-------|-------|-----------|
| NOM. | puer | ager | vir | filius |
| GEN. | puerī | agrī | virī | filii, -ī |
| DAT. | puerō | agrō | virō | filio |
| ACC. | puerum | agrum | virum | filium |
| ABL. | puerō | agrō | virō | filio |

PLURAL

| | | | | |
|------|----------|---------|---------|----------|
| NOM. | puerī | agrī | virī | filii |
| GEN. | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | filiorum |
| DAT. | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | filiis |
| ACC. | puerōs | agrōs | virōs | filios |
| ABL. | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | filiis |

a. The vocative singular of **filius** is **filii**.

498.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

| SINGULAR | | | | | CASE ENDINGS FOR CONSONANT STEMS | |
|----------|---------|-----------|------------|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| | | | | | M. AND F. N. | |
| NOM. | dux | miles | virtūs | caput | (-s) | |
| GEN. | ducis | militis | virtūtis | capitis | -is | -is |
| DAT. | duci | militi | virtūti | capiti | -i | -i |
| ACC. | ducem | militem | virtutem | caput | -em | |
| ABL. | duce | milite | virtute | capite | -e | -e |
| PLURAL | | | | | | |
| NOM. | ducēs | militēs | virtūtēs | capita | -ēs | -a |
| GEN. | ducum | militum | virtutum | capitum | -um | -um |
| DAT. | ducibus | militibus | virtutibus | capitibus | -ibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | ducēs | militēs | virtūtēs | capita | -ēs | -a |
| ABL. | ducibus | militibus | virtutibus | capitibus | -ibus | -ibus |

| SINGULAR | | | | |
|----------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| NOM. | cōnsul | homō | pater | corpus |
| GEN. | cōnsulis | hominis | patris | corporis |
| DAT. | cōnsuli | hominī | patrī | corporī |
| ACC. | cōnsule m | hominem | patrem | corpus |
| ABL. | cōnsule | homine | patre | corpore |
| PLURAL | | | | |
| NOM. | cōnsulēs | hominēs | patrēs | corpora |
| GEN. | cōnsul um | homin um | patr um | corpor um |
| DAT. | cōnsul ibus | homin ibus | patr ibus | corpor ibus |
| ACC. | cōnsulēs | hominēs | patrēs | corpora |
| ABL. | cōnsul ibus | homin ibus | patr ibus | corpor ibus |

| λ. -I- STEMS | | | | | CASE ENDINGS FOR -i- STEMS | |
|--------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| SINGULAR | | | | | M. AND F. | N. |
| NOM. | collis | caedēs | mōns | animal | (-s) | |
| GEN. | collis | caedis | montis | animālis | -is | -is |
| DAT. | collī | caedi | montī | animālī | -ī | -ī |
| ACC. | colle m | caedem | montem | animal | -em | |
| ABL. | colle | caede | monte | animālī | -e | -ī |
| PLURAL | | | | | | |
| NOM. | collēs | caedēs | montēs | animālia | -ēs | -ia |
| GEN. | coll ium | caed ium | mont ium | animāli um | -i um | -i um |
| DAT. | coll ibus | caedi bus | mont ibus | animāl ibus | -i bus | -i bus |
| ACC. | collis, ēs | caedis, ēs | montis, ēs | animālia | -is, ēs | -ia |
| ABL. | coll ibus | caedi bus | mont ibus | animāl ibus | -i bus | -i bus |

499. FOURTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -u-

| SINGULAR | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------------|--------|--------------|
| | MASC. | CASE ENDINGS | NEUT. | CASE ENDINGS |
| NOM. | cāsus | -us | cornū | -ū |
| GEN. | cāsūs | -ūs | cornūs | -ūs |
| DAT. | cāsui, ū | -ui, ū | cornū | -ū |
| ACC. | cāsum | -um | cornū | -ū |
| ABL. | cāsū | -ū | cornū | -ū |

| | MASC. | PLURAL CASE ENDINGS | NEUT. | CASE ENDINGS |
|------|---------|------------------------|----------|--------------|
| NOM. | cāsūs | -ūs | cornua | -ua |
| GEN. | cāsuū | -uum | cornuum | -uum |
| DAT. | cāsibus | -ibus | cornibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | cāsūs | -ūs | cornua | -ua |
| ABL. | cāsibus | -ibus | cornibus | -ibus |

500. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

| | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | CASE ENDINGS | |
|------|-------|--------|-------|-------|--------------|-------|
| | | | | | SING. | PLUR. |
| NOM. | diēs | diēs | rēs | rēs | -ēs | -ēs |
| GEN. | diēi | diērum | rei | rērum | -ēi | -ērum |
| DAT. | diēi | diēbus | rei | rēbus | -ēi | -ēbus |
| ACC. | diem | diēs | rem | rēs | -em | -ēs |
| ABL. | diē | diēbus | rē | rēbus | -ē | -ēbus |

501. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

| SINGULAR | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|------------------|
| NOM. | vir | vīs | deus |
| GEN. | virī | — | dei |
| DAT. | virō | — | deō |
| ACC. | virum | vīm | deum |
| ABL. | virō | vī | deō |
| PLURAL | | | |
| NOM. | virī | virēs | dei, dii, di |
| GEN. | virōrum | virium | deōrum, deum |
| DAT. | virīs | viribus | deīs, diīs, diīs |
| ACC. | virōs | virēs | deōs |
| ABL. | virīs | viribus | deīs, diīs, diīs |
| SINGULAR | | | |
| NOM. | senex | iter | domus |
| GEN. | senis | itineris | domūs |
| DAT. | senī | itinerī | domui, ō |
| ACC. | senem | iter | domum |
| ABL. | sene | itinere | domō, ū |

| | | PLURAL | |
|------|---------|------------|--------------|
| NOM. | senēs | itinerā | domūs |
| GEN. | senum | itinerum | domuum, ōrum |
| DAT. | senibus | itineribus | domibus |
| ACC. | senēs | itinerā | domōs, ūs |
| ABL. | senibus | itineribus | domibus |

ADJECTIVES

502.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

| | | SINGULAR | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | bonus | bona | bonum |
| GEN. | boni | bonae | boni |
| DAT. | bonō | bonae | bonō |
| ACC. | bonum | bonam | bonum |
| ABL. | bonō | bonā | bonō |
| | | PLURAL | |
| NOM. | boni | bonae | bona |
| GEN. | bonōrum | bonārum | bonōrum |
| DAT. | bonis | bonis | bonis |
| ACC. | bonōs | bonās | bona |
| ABL. | bonis | bonis | bonis |
| | | SINGULAR | |
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | liber | libera | liberum |
| GEN. | liberi | liberae | liberi |
| DAT. | liberō | liberae | liberō |
| ACC. | liberum | liberam | liberum |
| ABL. | liberō | liberā | liberō |
| | | PLURAL | |
| NOM. | liberi | liberae | libera |
| GEN. | liberōrum | liberārum | liberōrum |
| DAT. | liberis | liberis | liberis |
| ACC. | liberōs | liberās | libera |
| ABL. | liberis | liberis | liberis |

| SINGULAR | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | niger | nigra | nigrum |
| GEN. | nigrī | nigrae | nigrī |
| DAT. | nigrō | nigrae | nigrō |
| ACC. | nigrum | nigram | nigrum |
| ABL. | nigrō | nigrā | nigrō |
| PLURAL | | | |
| NOM. | nigrī | nigrae | nigra |
| GEN. | nigrōrum | nigrārum | nigrōrum |
| DAT. | nigrīs | nigrīs | nigrīs |
| ACC. | nigrōs | nigrās | nigra |
| ABL. | nigrīs | nigrīs | nigrīs |

503.

THIRD DECLENSION

| SINGULAR | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | ācer | ācris | ācre |
| GEN. | ācris | ācris | ācris |
| DAT. | ācrī | ācrī | ācrī |
| ACC. | ācrem | ācrem | ācre |
| ABL. | ācrī | ācrī | ācrī |
| PLURAL | | | |
| NOM. | ācrēs | ācrēs | ācria |
| GEN. | ācrium | ācrium | ācrium |
| DAT. | ācribus | ācribus | ācribus |
| ACC. | ācrīs, ēs | ācrīs, ēs | ācria |
| ABL. | ācribus | ācribus | ācribus |

| SINGULAR | | | | |
|----------|----------------|---------|----------------|-----------|
| | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | facilis | facile | ferāx | ferāx |
| GEN. | facilis | facilis | ferācis | ferācis |
| DAT. | facili | facili | ferāci | ferāci |
| ACC. | facilem | facile | ferācem | ferāx |
| ABL. | facili | facili | ferāci, e | ferāci, e |

| | PLURAL | | | |
|------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | facilēs | facilia | ferācēs | ferācia |
| GEN. | facilium | facilium | ferācium | ferācium |
| DAT. | facilibus | facilibus | ferācibus | ferācibus |
| ACC. | facilis, ēs | facilia | ferācis, ēs | ferācia |
| ABL. | facilibus | facilibus | ferācibus | ferācibus |

504.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

| | SINGULAR | | PLURAL | |
|------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | amāns | amāns | amantēs | amantia |
| GEN. | amantis | amantis | amantium | amantium |
| DAT. | amanti | amanti | amantibus | amantibus |
| ACC. | amantem | amāns | amantis, ēs | amantia |
| ABL. | amante, i | amānte, i | amantibus | amantibus |
| NOM. | iēns | iēns | euntēs | euntia |
| GEN. | euntis | euntis | euntium | euntium |
| DAT. | eunti | eunti | euntibus | euntibus |
| ACC. | euntem | iēns | euntis, ēs | euntia |
| ABL. | eunte, i | eunte, i | euntibus | euntibus |

505.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------|----------|-------|-------|----------------|---------|---------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | alius | alia | aliud | alii | aliae | alia |
| GEN. | alius | alius | alius | aliōrum | aliārum | aliōrum |
| DAT. | aliī | aliī | aliī | aliīs | aliīs | aliīs |
| ACC. | alium | aliam | aliud | aliōs | aliās | alia |
| ABL. | aliō | aliā | aliō | aliīs | aliīs | aliīs |
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | |
| NOM. | ūnus | ūna | ūnum | trēs | tria | |
| GEN. | ūnius | ūnius | ūnius | trium | trium | |
| DAT. | ūnī | ūnī | ūnī | tribus | tribus | |
| ACC. | ūnum | ūnam | ūnum | trīs, trēs | tria | |
| ABL. | ūnō | ūnā | ūnō | tribus | tribus | |

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | SING. | PLUR. |
|------|-----------|--------|--------|-------|----------|
| NOM. | duo | duae | duo | mille | millia |
| GEN. | duōrum | duārum | duōrum | mille | millium |
| DAT. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus | mille | millibus |
| ACC. | duōs, duo | duās | duo | mille | millia |
| ABL. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus | mille | millibus |

506. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| lātus (lāt-) | lātiōr, lātiūs | lātissimus, a, um |
| fortis (fort-) | fortiōr, fortiūs | fortissimus, a, um |
| vēlōx (vēlōc-) | vēlōciōr, vēlōcius | vēlōcissimus, a, um |
| pulcher (pulchr-) | pulchriōr, pulchriūs | pulcherrimus, a, um |
| similis (simil-) | similiōr, similiūs | simillimus, a, um |

507. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

| | SINGULAR | | PLURAL | |
|------|------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| | M. AND F. | N. | M. AND F. | N. |
| NOM. | lātiōr | lātiūs | lātiōrēs | lātiōra |
| GEN. | lātiōris | lātiōris | lātiōrum | lātiōrum |
| DAT. | lātiōri | lātiōri | lātiōribus | lātiōribus |
| ACC. | lātiōrem | lātiūs | lātiōrēs, is | lātiōra |
| ABL. | lātiōre, i | lātiōre, i | lātiōribus | lātiōribus |
| NOM. | — | plūs | plūrēs | plūra |
| GEN. | — | plūris | plūrium | plūrium |
| DAT. | — | — | plūribus | plūribus |
| ACC. | — | plūs | plūrēs, is | plūra |
| ABL. | — | — | plūribus | plūribus |

508.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|----------------------|-------------------|
| bonus, a, um | melior, melius | optimus, a, um |
| malus, a, um | peior, peius | pessimus, a, um |
| magnus, a, um | maior, maius | maximus, a, um |
| parvus, a, um | minor, minus | minimus, a, um |
| multus, a, um | —, plūs | plūrimus, a, um |
| multi, ae, a | plūrēs, plūra | plūrimī, ae, a |
| vetus, veteris | vetustior, vetustius | veterrimus, a, um |
| senex, senis | senior (maior nātū) | maximus nātū |
| iuvenis, e | iūnior (minor nātū) | minimus nātū |
| exterus | exterior | extrēmus, extimus |
| inferus | inferior | īnīmus, īmus |
| posterus | posterior | postrēmus |
| superus | superior | postumus |
| (Lacking positive supplied by adverb or preposition) | | suprēmus |
| | | summus |

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| [cis, citrā, <i>this side</i>] | citerior | citimus |
| [in, intrā, <i>within</i>] | interior | intimus |
| [prae, prō, <i>before</i>] | prior | prīmus |
| [prope, <i>near</i>] | propior | proximus |
| [ultrā, <i>beyond</i>] | ulterior | ultimus |

509.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|
| cārē (carus) | cārius | cārissimē |
| pulchrē (pulcher) | pulchrius | pulcherrimē |
| fortiter (fortis) | fortius | fortissimē |
| facile (facilis) | facilius | facillimē |
| bene (bonus) | melius | optimē |
| male (malus) | peius | pessimē |

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| multum (multus) | plūs | plūrimum |
| parum, <i>little</i> | minus | minimē |
| diū, <i>long, for a long time</i> | diūtius | diūtissimē |
| saepe, <i>often</i> | saepius | saepissimē |

510.

| CARDINALS | NUMERALS | ORDINALS |
|---|----------|--|
| 1. ūnus, a, um | | prīmus, a, um |
| 2. duo, duae, duo | | secundus (<i>or</i> alter) |
| 3. trēs, tria | | tertius |
| 4. quattuor | | quārtus |
| 5. quīnque | | quīntus |
| 6. sex | | sextus |
| 7. septem | | septimus |
| 8. octō | | octāvus |
| 9. novem | | nōnus |
| 10. decem | | decimus |
| 11. ūndecim | | ūndecimus |
| 12. duodecim | | duodecimus |
| 13. tredecim | | tertius decimus |
| 14. quattuordecim | | quartus decimus |
| 15. quīndecim | | quīntus decimus |
| 16. sēdecim | | sextus decimus |
| 17. septendecim | | septimus decimus |
| 18. duodēvīgintī | | duodēvīcēsīmus |
| 19. ūndēvīgintī | | ūndēvīcēsīmus |
| 20. vīgintī | | vīcēsīmus |
| 21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī | | { vīcēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus |
| 22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī | | { vīcēsīmus secundus <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsīmus |

| CARDINALS | | ORDINALS | |
|-----------|---|----------|---|
| 28. | duodētrīgintā | | duodētrīcēsīmus |
| 29. | ūndētrīgintā | | ūndētrīcēsīmus |
| 30. | trīgintā | | trīcēsīmus |
| 40. | quadrāgintā | | quadrāgēsīmus |
| 50. | quīnquāgintā | | quīnquāgēsīmus |
| 60. | sexāgintā | | sexāgēsīmus |
| 70. | septuāgintā | | septuāgēsīmus |
| 80. | octōgintā | | octōgēsīmus |
| 90. | nōnāgintā | | nōnāgēsīmus |
| 100. | centum | | centēsīmus |
| 101. | { centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus | | { centēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> centēsīmus et prīmus |
| 200. | ducentī, ae, a | | ducentēsīmus |
| 300. | trecentī | | trecentēsīmus |
| 400. | quadrīngentī | | quadrīngentēsīmus |
| 500. | quīngentī | | quīngentēsīmus |
| 600. | sescentī | | sēscentēsīmus |
| 700. | septīngentī | | septīngentēsīmus |
| 800. | octīngentī | | octīngentēsīmus |
| 900. | nōngentī | | nōngentēsīmus |
| 1,000. | mīlle | | mīllēsīmus |
| 2,000. | duo mīllia | | bis mīllēsīmus |
| 100,000. | centum mīllia | | centiēs mīllēsīmus |

PRONOUNS

| 511. PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE) | | | | REFLEXIVE (3D PERS.) | | |
|-------------------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|
| | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| NOM. | ego | nōs | tū | vōs | — | — |
| GEN. | meī | { nostrum, nostrī | tuī | { vestrum, vestrī | suī | suī |
| DAT. | mihi | nōbīs | tibi | vōbīs | sibi | sibi |
| ACC. | mē | nōs | tē | vōs | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |
| ABL. | mē | nōbīs | tē | vōbīs | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |

512.

DEMONSTRATIVE

| | SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | <i>F.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| NOM. | hic | haec | hoc | hi | hae | haec |
| GEN. | huius | huius | huius | hōrum | hārum | hōrum |
| DAT. | huic | huic | huic | his | his | his |
| ACC. | hunc | hanc | hoc | hōs | hās | haec |
| ABL. | hōc | hāc | hōc | his | his | his |

| | SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| NOM. | iste | ista | istud | istī | istae | ista |
| GEN. | istius | istius | istius | istōrum | istārum | istōrum |
| DAT. | istī | istī | istī | istis | istis | istis |
| ACC. | istum | istam | istud | istōs | istās | ista |
| ABL. | istō | istā | istō | istis | istis | istis |

| | SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| NOM. | ille | illa | illud | illī | illae | illa |
| GEN. | illius | illius | illius | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| DAT. | illī | illī | illī | illis | illis | illis |
| ACC. | illum | illam | illud | illōs | illās | illa |
| ABL. | illō | illā | illō | illis | illis | illis |

| | SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| NOM. | is | ea | id | eī, īī | eae | ea |
| GEN. | eius | eius | eius | eōrum | eārum | eōrum |
| DAT. | eī | eī | eī | eīs, īīs | eīs, īīs | eīs, īīs |
| ACC. | eum | eam | id | eōs | eās | ea |
| ABL. | eō | eā | eō | eīs, īīs | eīs, īīs | eīs, īīs |

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|--------------|----------|---------|--|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| NOM. idem | eādem | Idem | | { eīdem īdem | eaedem | eādem |
| GEN. eiusdem | eiusdem | eiusdem | | { eōrun- dem | eārun- dem | eōrun- dem |
| DAT. eidem | eīdem | eīdem | | { eīsdem īsdem | eīsdem īsdem | eīsdem īsdem |
| ACC. eundem | eandem | Idem | | eōsdem | eāsdem | eādem |
| ABL. eōdem | eādem | eōdem | | { eīsdem īsdem | eīsdem īsdem | eīsdem īsdem |

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|-------------|----------|--------|--|---------|---------|-----------|
| NOM. ipse | ipsa | ipsum | | ipsī | ipsae | ipsa |
| GEN. ipsīus | ipsīus | ipsīus | | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrurr. |
| DAT. ipsī | ipsī | ipsī | | ipsīs | ipsīs | ipsīs |
| ACC. ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | | ipsōs | ipsās | ipsa |
| ABL. ipsō | ipsā | ipsō | | ipsīs | ipsīs | ipsīs |

513.

RELATIVE

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|------------|----------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. quī | quae | quod | | quī | quae | quae |
| GEN. cuius | cuius | cuius | | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. cui | cui | cui | | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. quem | quam | quod | | quōs | quās | quae |
| ABL. quō | quā | quō | | quibus | quibus | quibus |

514.

INTERROGATIVE

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|-----------------|----------|-------------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. quis (quī) | quae | quid (quod) | | quī | quae | quae |
| GEN. cuius | cuius | cuius | | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. cui | cui | cui | | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. quem | quam | quid (quod) | | quōs | quās | quae |
| ABL. quō | quā | quō | | quibus | quibus | quibus |

515.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
|------|-----------------|----------|------------------|
| NOM. | aliquis, aliqui | aliqua | aliquid, aliquod |
| GEN. | alicuius | alicuius | alicuius |
| DAT. | alicui | alicui | alicui |
| ACC. | aliquem | aliquam | aliquid, aliquod |
| ABL. | aliquō | aliquā | aliquō |

PLURAL

| | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| NOM. | aliqui | aliquae | aliqua |
| GEN. | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| DAT. | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| ACC. | aliquōs | aliquās | aliqua |
| ABL. | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |

SINGULAR

| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
|------|----------|----------|------------------|
| NOM. | quidam | quaedam | quiddam, quoddam |
| GEN. | cuiusdam | cuiusdam | cuiusdam |
| DAT. | cuidam | cuidam | cuidam |
| ACC. | quendam | quandam | quiddam, quoddam |
| ABL. | quōdam | quādam | quōdam |

PLURAL

| | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| NOM. | quidam | quaedam | quaedam |
| GEN. | quōrundam | quārundam | quōrundam |
| DAT. | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| ACC. | quōsdam | quāsdam | quaedam |
| ABL. | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

REGULAR VERBS

516. FIRST CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ā*PRIN. PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* — *love*

INDICATIVE

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>I love, am loving, do love</i> | | <i>I am loved, am being loved</i> | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| <i>amō</i> | <i>amāmus</i> | <i>amor</i> | <i>amāmur</i> |
| <i>amās</i> | <i>amātis</i> | <i>amāris, re</i> | <i>amāmini</i> |
| <i>amat</i> | <i>amant</i> | <i>amātur</i> | <i>amantur</i> |
| <i>I was loving, loved, did love</i> | | <i>I was loved, was being loved</i> | |
| <i>amābam</i> | <i>amābāmus</i> | <i>amābar</i> | <i>amābāmur</i> |
| <i>amābās</i> | <i>amābātis</i> | <i>amābāris, re</i> | <i>amābāmini</i> |
| <i>amābat</i> | <i>amābant</i> | <i>amābātur</i> | <i>amābantur</i> |
| <i>I shall love</i> | | <i>I shall be loved</i> | |
| <i>amābō</i> | <i>amābimus</i> | <i>amābor</i> | <i>amābimur</i> |
| <i>amābis</i> | <i>amābitis</i> | <i>amāberis, re</i> | <i>amābimini</i> |
| <i>amābit</i> | <i>amābunt</i> | <i>amābitur</i> | <i>amābuntur</i> |
| <i>I have loved, loved</i> | | <i>I have been loved, was loved</i> | |
| <i>amāvī</i> | <i>amāvimus</i> | <i>amātus sum</i> | <i>amātī sumus</i> |
| <i>amāvisti</i> | <i>amāvistis</i> | <i>(a, um) es</i> | <i>(ae, a) estis</i> |
| <i>amāvit</i> | <i>amāverunt, ēre</i> | <i>est</i> | <i>sunt</i> |
| <i>I had loved</i> | | <i>I had been loved</i> | |
| <i>amāveram</i> | <i>amāverāmus</i> | <i>amātus eram</i> | <i>amātī erāmus</i> |
| <i>amāverās</i> | <i>amāverātis</i> | <i>(a, um) erās</i> | <i>(ae, a) erātis</i> |
| <i>amāverat</i> | <i>amāverant</i> | <i>erat</i> | <i>erant</i> |
| <i>I shall have loved</i> | | <i>I shall have been loved</i> | |
| <i>amāverō</i> | <i>amāverimus</i> | <i>amātus erō</i> | <i>amātī erimus</i> |
| <i>amāveris</i> | <i>amāveritis</i> | <i>(a, um) eris</i> | <i>(ae, a) eritis</i> |
| <i>amāverit</i> | <i>amāverint</i> | <i>erit</i> | <i>erunt</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>amem</i> | <i>amēmus</i> | <i>amer</i> | <i>amēmur</i> |
| <i>amēs</i> | <i>amētis</i> | <i>amēris, re</i> | <i>amēmini</i> |
| <i>amet</i> | <i>ament</i> | <i>amētur</i> | <i>amentur</i> |

ACTIVE

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| amārem | amārēmus |
| amārēs | amārētis |
| amāret | amārent |

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| amāverim | amāvcrimus |
| amāveris | amāveritis |
| amāverit | amāverint |

| | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| amāvissem | amāvissēmus |
| amāvissēs | amāvissētis |
| amāvisset | amāvissent |

IMPERFECT

| <i>Singular</i> |
|---------------------|
| amārer |
| amārēris, re |
| amārētur |

PERFECT

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| amātus sim | amātī simus |
| (a, um) sīs | (ae, a) sītis |
| sit | sint |

PLUPERFECT

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| amātus essem | amātī essēmus |
| (a, um) essēs | (ae, a) essētis |
| esset | essent |

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|
| 2. amā, love <i>thou</i> | 2. amāte, love <i>ye</i> | 2. amāre, be thou <i>loved</i> | 2. amāmini, be <i>ye loved</i> |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|

FUTURE

| | | | |
|--|---|---|--|
| 2. amātō, thou <i>shalt love</i> | 2. amātōte, you <i>shall love</i> | 2. amātor, thou <i>shalt be loved</i> | 2. ——— |
| 3. amātō, he <i>shall love</i> | 3. amantō, they <i>shall love</i> | 3. amātor, he <i>shall be loved</i> | 3. amantor, they <i>shall be loved</i> |

INFINITIVE

amāre, to love

PRESENT **amārī, to be loved**

amātūrus (a, um) esse, to be
about to love

FUTURE **amātum irī, to be about to be**
loved

amāvisse, to have loved

PERFECT **amātus (a, um) esse, to have**
been loved

PARTICIPLES

amāns, antis, loving

PRESENT ——— ———

amātūrus, a, um, about to
love

FUTURE GER. **amandus, a, um, to be**
loved

PERFECT **amātus, a, um, having been**
loved, loved

GERUND

GEN. **amandī, of loving**

ACC. **amandum, loving**

DAT. **amandō, for loving**

ABL. **amandō, by loving**

SUPINE

amātum

amātū

517. SECOND CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ē*PRIN. PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monui, monitus** — *advise*

| ACTIVE | | INDICATIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|--|----------------|---------------------------------------|---|---------|--|
| | | PRESENT | | | |
| <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i> | | <i>I am advised, am being advised</i> | | | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | | |
| moneō | monēmus | moneor | monēmur | | |
| monēs | monētis | monēris, re | monēmini | | |
| monet | monent | monētur | monentur | | |
| <i>I was advising, advised, did advise</i> | | IMPERFECT | <i>I was advised, was being advised</i> | | |
| monēbam | monēbāmus | monēbar | monēbāmur | | |
| monēbās | monēbātis | monēbāris, re | monēbāmini | | |
| monēbat | monēbant | monēbātur | monēbantur | | |
| <i>I shall advise</i> | | FUTURE | <i>I shall be advised</i> | | |
| monēbō | monēbimus | monēbor | monēbimur | | |
| monēbis | monēbitis | monēberis, re | monēbimini | | |
| monēbit | monēbunt | monēbitur | monēbuntur | | |
| <i>I have advised, advised</i> | | PERFECT | <i>I have been advised, I was advised</i> | | |
| monuī | monuimus | monitus sum | monitī sumus | | |
| monuisti | monuistis | (a, um) es | (ae, a) estis | | |
| monuit | monuerunt, ēre | est | sunt | | |
| <i>I had advised</i> | | PLUPERFECT | <i>I had been advised</i> | | |
| monueram | monuerāmus | monitus eram | monitī erāmus | | |
| monuerās | monuerātis | (a, um) erās | (ae, a) erātis | | |
| monuerat | monuerant | erat | erant | | |
| <i>I shall have advised</i> | | FUTURE PERFECT | <i>I shall have been advised</i> | | |
| monuerō | monuerimus | monitus erō | monitī erimus | | |
| monueris | monueritis | (a, um) eris | (ae, a) eritis | | |
| monuerit | monuerint | erit | erunt | | |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT | | | |
|---------|----------|--------------|-----------|
| moneam | moneāmus | monear | moneāmur |
| moneās | moneātis | moneāris, re | moneāmini |
| moneat | moneant | moneātur | moneantur |

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| monērem | monērēmus | monērer | monērēmur |
| monērēs | monērētis | monērēris, re | monērēmini |
| monēret | monērent | monērētur | monērentur |
| PERFECT | | | |
| monuerim | monuerimus | monitus sim | moniti simus |
| monueris | monueritis | (a, um) sis | (ae, a) sitis |
| monuerit | monuerint | sit | sint |
| PLUPERFECT | | | |
| monuissē | monuissēmus | monitus essem | moniti essēmus |
| monuissēs | monuissētis | (a, um) essēs | (ae, a) essētis |
| monuisset | monuissent | esset | essent |

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. monē, <i>ad- vise thou</i> | 2. monēte, <i>ad- vise ye</i> | 2. monēre, <i>be thou advised</i> | 2. monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i> |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

FUTURE

| | | | |
|---|--|--|---|
| 2. monētō, <i>thou shalt advise</i> | 2. monētōte, <i>you shall advise</i> | 2. & 3. monētor, <i>thou shalt (he shall) be ad- vised</i> | 2. — — — |
| 3. monētō, <i>he shall advise</i> | 3. monentō, <i>they shall advise</i> | | 3. monentor, <i>they shall be advised</i> |

INFINITIVE

| | | |
|--|---------|---|
| monēre, <i>to advise</i> | PRESENT | monērī, <i>to be advised</i> |
| monitūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be about to advise</i> | FUTURE | monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised</i> |
| monuisse, <i>to have advised</i> | PERFECT | monitus (a, um) esse, <i>to have been advised</i> |

PARTICIPLES

| | | |
|--|---------|---|
| monēns, entis, <i>advising</i> | PRESENT | — — — |
| monitūrus, a, um, <i>about to advise</i> | FUTURE | GER. monendus, a, um, <i>to be advised</i> |
| — — — | PERFECT | monitus, a, um, <i>having been advised, advised</i> |

GERUND

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| GEN. monendī, <i>of advising</i> | ACC. monendum, <i>advising</i> |
| DAT. monendō, <i>for advising</i> | ABL. monendō, <i>by advising</i> |

SUPINE

monitum

monitū

518. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *e*PRIN. PARTS: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus* — *lead*

INDICATIVE

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>I lead, am leading, do lead</i> | | <i>I am led, am being led</i> | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| <i>dūcō</i> | <i>dūcimus</i> | <i>dūcor</i> | <i>dūcimur</i> |
| <i>dūcis</i> | <i>dūcitis</i> | <i>dūceris, re</i> | <i>dūcimini</i> |
| <i>dūcit</i> | <i>dūcunt</i> | <i>dūcitur</i> | <i>dūcuntur</i> |
| <i>I was leading, led, did lead</i> | | <i>I was led, was being led</i> | |
| <i>dūcēbam</i> | <i>dūcēbāmus</i> | <i>dūcēbar</i> | <i>dūcēbāmur</i> |
| <i>dūcēbās</i> | <i>dūcēbātis</i> | <i>dūcēbāris, re</i> | <i>dūcēbāmini</i> |
| <i>dūcēbat</i> | <i>dūcēbant</i> | <i>dūcēbātur</i> | <i>dūcēbantur</i> |
| <i>I shall lead</i> | | <i>I shall be led</i> | |
| <i>dūcam</i> | <i>dūcēmus</i> | <i>dūcar</i> | <i>dūcēmur</i> |
| <i>dūcēs</i> | <i>dūcētis</i> | <i>dūcēris, re</i> | <i>dūcēmini</i> |
| <i>dūcet</i> | <i>dūcent</i> | <i>dūcētur</i> | <i>dūcentur</i> |
| <i>I have led, led</i> | | <i>I have been led, was led</i> | |
| <i>dūxī</i> | <i>dūximus</i> | <i>ductus sum</i> | <i>ducti sumus</i> |
| <i>dūxistī</i> | <i>dūxistis</i> | <i>(a, um) es</i> | <i>(ae, a) estis</i> |
| <i>dūxit</i> | <i>dūxērunt, ēre</i> | <i>est</i> | <i>sunt</i> |
| <i>I had led</i> | | <i>I had been led</i> | |
| <i>dūxeram</i> | <i>dūxerāmus</i> | <i>ductus eram</i> | <i>ducti erāmus</i> |
| <i>dūxerās</i> | <i>dūxerātis</i> | <i>(a, um) erās</i> | <i>(ae, a) erātis</i> |
| <i>dūxerat</i> | <i>dūxerant</i> | <i>erat</i> | <i>erant</i> |
| <i>I shall have led</i> | | <i>I shall have been led</i> | |
| <i>dūxerō</i> | <i>dūxerimus</i> | <i>ductus erō</i> | <i>ducti erimus</i> |
| <i>dūxeris</i> | <i>dūxeritis</i> | <i>(a, um) eris</i> | <i>(ae, a) eritis</i> |
| <i>dūxerit</i> | <i>dūxerint</i> | <i>erit</i> | <i>erunt</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>dūcam</i> | <i>dūcāmus</i> | <i>dūcar</i> | <i>dūcāmur</i> |
| <i>dūcās</i> | <i>dūcātis</i> | <i>dūcāris, re</i> | <i>dūcāmini</i> |
| <i>dūcat</i> | <i>dūcant</i> | <i>dūcātur</i> | <i>dūcantur</i> |
| IMPERFECT | | | |
| <i>dūcerem</i> | <i>dūcerēmus</i> | <i>dūcerer</i> | <i>dūcerēmur</i> |
| <i>dūcerēs</i> | <i>dūcerētis</i> | <i>dūcerēris, re</i> | <i>dūcerēmini</i> |
| <i>dūceret</i> | <i>dūcerent</i> | <i>dūcerētur</i> | <i>dūcerentur</i> |

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|---|--|--|---|
| | | PERFECT | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| dūxerim | dūxerimus | ductus sim | ducti simus |
| dūxeris | dūxeritis | (a, um) sis | (ae, a) sitis |
| dūxerit | dūxerint | sit | sint |
| | | PLUPERFECT | |
| dūxissem | dūxissemus | ductus essem | ducti essemus |
| dūxisseis | dūxisseitis | (a, um) essēs | (ae, a) essētis |
| dūxisset | dūxisset | esset | essent |
| IMPERATIVE | | | |
| PRESENT | | | |
| 2. dūc, ¹ <i>lead</i> <i>thou</i> | 2. dūcite, <i>lead</i> <i>ye</i> | 2. dūcere, <i>be</i> <i>thou led</i> | 2. dūcimini, <i>be ye led</i> |
| FUTURE | | | |
| 2. dūcitō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt lead</i> | 2. dūcitōte, <i>ye</i> <i>shall lead</i> | 2. dūcitor, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt be led</i> | 2. ——— |
| 3. dūcitō, <i>he</i> <i>shall lead</i> | 3. dūcuntō, <i>they</i> <i>shall lead</i> | 3. dūcitor, <i>he</i> <i>shall be led</i> | 3. dūcuntor, <i>they</i> <i>shall be led</i> |
| INFINITIVE | | | |
| dūcere, <i>to lead</i> | PRESENT | dūcī, <i>to be led</i> | |
| ductūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to lead</i> | FUTURE | ductum iri, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>led</i> | |
| dūxisse, <i>to have led</i> | PERFECT | ductus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been led</i> | |
| PARTICIPLES | | | |
| dūcēns, entis, <i>leading</i> | PRESENT | ————— | ————— |
| ductūrus, a, um, <i>about to lead</i> | FUTURE | GER. dūcendus, a, um, <i>to be</i> <i>led</i> | |
| ————— | PERFECT | ductus, <i>having been led, led</i> | |
| GERUND | | | |
| GEN. dūcendī, <i>of leading</i> | ACC. dūcendum, <i>leading</i> | | |
| DAT. dūcendō, <i>for leading</i> | ABL. dūcendō, <i>by leading</i> | | |
| SUPINE | | | |
| ductum | | ductū | |

¹ dūcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have as present imperatives dūc, dūc, fac, fer; the regular form of other verbs ends in -e, as gerō, imperative gere.

519. FOURTH CONJUGATION. VERBS IN I

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, ire, audīvi, audītus** — *hear*

INDICATIVE

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|---|------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| <i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i> | | <i>I am heard, am being heard</i> | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| audiō | audīmus | audior | audimur |
| audīs | audītis | audiris, re | audimini |
| audit | audiunt | audītur | audiuntur |
| <i>I was hearing, heard, did hear</i> | | <i>I was heard, was being heard</i> | |
| audiēbam | audiēbāmus | audiēbar | audiēbāmur |
| audiēbās | audiēbātis | audiēbāris, re | audiēbāmini |
| audiēbat | audiēbant | audiēbātur | audiēbantur |
| <i>I shall hear</i> | | <i>I shall be heard</i> | |
| audiam | audiēmus | audiar | audiēmur |
| audiēs | audiētis | audiēris, re | audiēmini |
| audiet | audient | audiētur | audientur |
| <i>I have heard, heard</i> | | <i>I have been heard, I was heard</i> | |
| audīvi | audivimus | audītus sum | audītī sumus |
| audivistī | audivistis | (a, um) es | (ae, a) estis |
| audivit | audivērunt, ēre | est | sunt |
| <i>I had heard</i> | | <i>I had been heard</i> | |
| audiveram | audiverāmus | audītus eram | audītī erāmus |
| audiverās | audiverātis | (a, um) erās | (ae, a) erātis |
| audiverat | audiverant | erat | erant |
| <i>I shall have heard</i> | | <i>I shall have been heard</i> | |
| audiverō | audiverimus | audītus erō | audītī erimus |
| audiveris | audiveritis | (a, um) eris | (ae, a) eritis |
| audiverit | audiverint | erit | erunt |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| audiam | audiāmus | audiar | audiāmur |
| audiās | audiātis | audiāris, re | audiāmini |
| audiat | audiant | audiātur | audiantur |

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

audīrem

audīrēmus

audīrer

audīrēmūr

audīrēs

audīrētis

audīrēris, re

audīrēmini

audīret

audīrent

audīrētur

audirentur

PERFECT

audīverim

audīverimus

auditus sim

audītī sīmus

audīveris

audīveritis

(a, um) sis

(ae, a) sītis

audīverit

audīverint

sit

sint

PLUPERFECT

audīvissem

audīvissemus

auditus essem

audītī essēmus

audīvisse

audīvissetis

(a, um) essēs

(ae, a) essētis

audīvisset

audīvissent

esset

essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. audī, *hear*
thou

2. audīte, *hear*
ye

2. audīre, *be*
thou heard

2. audīmini, *be*
ye heard

FUTURE

2. audītō, *thou*
shalt hear

2. audītōte, *you*
shall hear

2. audītor, *thou*
shalt be heard

2. ———

3. audītō, *he*
shall hear

3. audiuntō, *they*
shall hear

3. audītor, *he*
shall be heard

3. audiuntor,
they shall be
heard

INFINITIVE

audire, *to hear*

PRESENT

audiri, *to be heard*

audīturus (a, um) esse, *to be*
about to hear

FUTURE

audītum iri, *to be about to be*
heard

audīvisse, *to have heard*

PERFECT

auditus (a, um) esse, *to have*
been heard

PARTICIPLES

audiēns, ientis, *hearing*

PRESENT

audīturus, a, um, *about to*
hear

FUTURE

GER. audiendus, a, um, *to*
be heard

PERFECT

auditus, *having been heard,*
heard

GERUND

GEN. audiendī, *of hearing*

ACC. audiendum, *hearing*

DAT. audiendō, *for hearing*

ABL. audiendō, *by hearing*

SUPINE

audītum

audītū

520. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *iō*PRIN. PARTS: **capiō, ere, cēpi, captus**

| INDICATIVE | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
| <i>I take, am taking, do take</i> | | <i>I am taken, am being taken</i> | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| capiō | capi ^{mus} | capior | capi ^{mur} |
| capi ^s | capi ^{tis} | caperis, re | capi ^{mini} |
| capi ^t | capi ^{unt} | capi ^{tur} | capi ^{untur} |
| IMPERFECT | | | |
| <i>I was taking, took, did take</i> | | <i>I was taken, was being taken</i> | |
| capiē ^{bam} | capiē ^{bāmus} | capiē ^{bar} | capiē ^{bāmur} |
| capiē ^{bās} | capiē ^{bātis} | capiē ^{bāris, re} | capiē ^{bāmini} |
| capiē ^{bat} | capiē ^{bant} | capiē ^{bātur} | capiē ^{bantur} |
| <i>I shall take</i> | | <i>I shall be taken</i> | |
| capi ^{am} | capiē ^{mus} | capi ^{ar} | capiē ^{mur} |
| capiē ^s | capiē ^{tis} | capiē ^{ris, re} | capiē ^{mini} |
| capi ^t | capiē ^t | capiē ^{tur} | capiē ^{tur} |
| PERFECT | | | |
| <i>I have taken, took</i> | | <i>I have been taken, I was taken</i> | |
| cē ^{pī} | cē ^{pimus} | captus sum | capti sumus |
| cē ^{pisti} | cē ^{pistis} | (a, um) es | (ae, a) estis |
| cē ^{pit} | cē ^{pērunt, ēre} | est | sunt |
| <i>I had taken</i> | | <i>I had been taken</i> | |
| cē ^{peram} | cē ^{perāmus} | captus eram | capti erāmus |
| cē ^{perās} | cē ^{perātis} | (a, um) erās | (ae, a) erātis |
| cē ^{perat} | cē ^{perant} | erat | erant |
| FUTURE PERFECT | | | |
| <i>I shall have taken</i> | | <i>I shall have been taken</i> | |
| cē ^{perō} | cē ^{perimus} | captus erō | capti erimus |
| cē ^{peris} | cē ^{peritis} | (a, um) eris | (ae, a) eritis |
| cē ^{perit} | cē ^{perint} | erit | erunt |
| SUBJUNCTIVE | | | |
| PRESENT | | | |
| capi ^{am} | capiā ^{mus} | capi ^{ar} | capiā ^{mur} |
| capiā ^s | capiā ^{tis} | capiā ^{ris, re} | capiā ^{mini} |
| capi ^{at} | capiā ^t | capiā ^{tur} | capiā ^{tur} |

| ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|---|---------------------------------|--|---|
| IMPERFECT | | IMPERFECT | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| caperem | caperēmus | caperer | caperēmur |
| caperēs | caperētis | caperēris, re | caperēmini |
| caperet | caperent | caperētur | caperentur |
| PERFECT | | PERFECT | |
| cēperim | cēperimus | captus sim | capti simus |
| cēperis | cēperitis | (a, um) sis | (ae, a) sitis |
| cēperit | cēperint | sit | sint |
| PLUPERFECT | | PLUPERFECT | |
| cēpīsem | cēpīssēmus | captus essem | capti essēmus |
| cēpīssēs | cēpīssētis | (a, um) essēs | (ae, a) essētis |
| cēpīset | cēpīssent | esset | essent |
| IMPERATIVE | | | |
| PRESENT | | | |
| 2. cape, take thou | 2. capite, take ye | 2. capere, bethou taken | 2. capimini, be ye taken |
| FUTURE | | | |
| 2. capitō, thou shalt take | 2. capitōte, ye shall take | 2. capitor, thou shalt be taken | 2. ——— 3. capiuntor, they shall be taken |
| 3. capitō, he shall take | 3. capiuntō, they shall take | 3. capitor, he shall be taken | |
| INFINITIVE | | | |
| capere, to take | PRESENT | capti, to be taken | |
| captūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to take | FUTURE | captum iri, to be about to be taken | |
| cēpisse, to have taken | PERFECT | captus (a, um) esse, to have been taken | |
| PARTICIPLES | | | |
| capīēns, ientis, taking | PRESENT | ——— | ——— |
| captūrus, a, um, about to take | FUTURE | GER. capiendus, a, um, to be taken | |
| ——— | PERFECT | captus, a, um, having been taken, taken | |
| GERUND | | | |
| GEN. capiendī, of taking | ACC. capiendum, taking | | |
| DAT. capiendō, for taking | ABL. capiendō, by taking | | |
| SUPINE | | | |
| captum | | captū | |

IRREGULAR VERBS

521. PRIN. PARTS: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be*

INDICATIVE

| <i>Singular</i> | PRESENT | <i>Plural</i> |
|-----------------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| <i>sum, I am</i> | | <i>sumus, we are</i> |
| <i>es, you are</i> | | <i>estis, you are</i> |
| <i>est (he, she, it) is</i> | | <i>sunt, they are</i> |

IMPERFECT

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>eram, I was</i> | <i>erāmus, we were</i> |
| <i>erās, you were</i> | <i>erātis, you were</i> |
| <i>erat, he was</i> | <i>erant, they were</i> |

FUTURE

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>erō, I shall be</i> | <i>erimus, we shall be</i> |
| <i>eris, you will be</i> | <i>eritis, you will be</i> |
| <i>erit, he will be</i> | <i>erunt, they will be</i> |

PERFECT

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>fui, I have been, was</i> | <i>fuimus, we have been, were</i> |
| <i>fuistī, you have been, were</i> | <i>fuistis, you have been, were</i> |
| <i>fuit, he has been, was</i> | <i>fuērunt } they have been, were</i> |
| | <i>fuēre</i> |

PLUPERFECT

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>fueram, I had been</i> | <i>fuerāmus, we had been</i> |
| <i>fuerās, you had been</i> | <i>fuerātis, you had been</i> |
| <i>fuerat, he had been</i> | <i>fuerant, they had been</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>fuerō, I shall have been</i> | <i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i> |
| <i>fueris, you will have been</i> | <i>fueritis, you will have been</i> |
| <i>fuerit, he will have been</i> | <i>fuerint, they will have been</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT | | IMPERFECT | |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| sim | sīmus | essem | essēmus |
| sīs | sītis | essēs | essētis |
| sit | sint | esset | essent |
| PERFECT | | PLUPERFECT | |
| fuerim | fuerīmus | fuissem | fuissēmus |
| fuerīs | fuerītis | fuissēs | fuissētis |
| fuerit | fuerint | fuisset | fuissent |

IMPERATIVE

| PRESENT | FUTURE |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| es, <i>be thou</i> | estō, <i>thou shalt be</i> |
| este, <i>be ye</i> | estō, <i>he shall be</i> |
| | estōte, <i>ye shall be</i> |
| | suntō, <i>they shall be</i> |

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

| | | |
|-------|---|-----------------------------|
| PRES. | esse, <i>to be</i> | — |
| PERF. | fuisse, <i>to have been</i> | — |
| FUT. | futūrus esse (<i>fore</i>), <i>to be about to be</i> | futūrus, <i>about to be</i> |

522. PRIN. PARTS : **possum, posse, potui, am able, can**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| PRES. <i>I am able, can</i> | | | | |
| | possum | possumus | possim | possīmus |
| | potes | potestis | possīs | possītis |
| | potest | possunt | possit | possint |
| IMPF. <i>I was able, could</i> | | | | |
| | poteram | poterāmus | possem | possēmus |
| FUT. <i>I shall be able</i> | | | | |
| | poterō | poterimus | | |

PERF. *I have been able, could*

potuī potuimus potuerim potuerimus

PLUP. *I had been able*

potueram potuerāmus potuissem potuissēmus

F. P. *I shall have been able*

potuerō potuerimus

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse, *to be able* PERF. potuisse, *to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. potēns (*used as adjective*), *powerful*

523.

PRIN. PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, benefit**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| PRES. <i>I benefit</i> | | | | |
| | prōsum | prōsumus | prōsim | prōsīmus |
| | prōdes | prōdestis | prōsis | prōsītis |
| | prōdest | prōsunt | prōsit | prōsint |
| IMPF. | prōderam | prōderāmus | prōdessem | prōdessēmus |
| FUT. | prōderō | prōderimus | | |
| PERF. | prōfuī | prōfuimus | prōfuerim | prōfuerimus |
| PLUP. | prōfueram | prōfuerāmus | prōfuissem | prōfuissēmus |
| F. P. | prōfuerō | prōfuerimus | | |

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse
FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus

524. PRIN. PARTS :

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

| | | | |
|-------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| PRES. | volō | nōlō | mālō |
| | vīs | nōn vīs | māvīs |
| | vult | nōn vult | māvult |
| | volumus | nōlumus | mālumus |
| | vultis | nōn vultis | māvultis |
| | volunt | nōlunt | mālunt |
| IMPF. | volēbam | nōlēbam | mālēbam |
| FUT. | volam, ēs, etc. | nōlam, ēs, etc. | mālam, ēs, etc. |
| PERF. | voluī | nōluī | māluī |
| PLUP. | volueram | nōlueram | mālueram |
| F. P. | voluerō | nōluerō | māluerō |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | | |
|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| PRES. | velim | nōlim | mālim |
| | velīs | nōlīs | mālīs |
| | velit | nōlit | mālit |
| | velīmus | nōlīmus | mālīmus |
| | velītis | nōlītis | mālītis |
| | velint | nōlint | mālint |
| IMPF. | vellem | nōllem | māllem |
| | vellēs | nōllēs | māllēs |
| | vellet | nōllet | māllet |
| | vellēmus | nōllēmus | māllēmus |
| | vellētis | nōllētis | māllētis |
| | vellent | nōllent | māllent |
| PERF. | voluerim | nōluerim | māluerim |
| PLUP. | voluissem | nōluissem | māluissem |

IMPERATIVE

| | | | |
|-------|---|----------------|---|
| PRES. | — | nōli | — |
| | | nōlite | |
| FUT. | — | [nōlītō, etc.] | — |

INFINITIVE

| | | | |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| PRES. | velle | nōlle | mālle |
| PERF. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

PARTICIPLE

| | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|---|
| PRES. | volēns | nōlēns | — |
|-------|--------|--------|---|

525. PRIN. PARTS : eō, ire, ii, itum, go

| | INDICATIVE | | SUBJUNCTIVE | IMPERATIVE | |
|-------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| PRES. | eō īs it | īmus ītis eunt | eam | ī ite | |
| IMPF. | ībam, ībās, ibat, etc. | | irem | { itō itō | itōte euntō |
| FUT. | ībō, ībis, ībit, etc. | | — | | |
| PERF. | iī, istī, iit, etc. | | ierim | | |
| PLUP. | ieram | | issem | | |
| F. P. | ierō | | | | |

| | INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLES |
|-------|-------------|--------------|
| PRES. | īre | īēns, euntis |
| PERF. | isse | itum |
| FUT. | itūrus esse | itūrus |
| | GERUND | SUPINE |
| GEN. | eundī | |
| DAT. | eundō | |
| ACC. | eundum | itum |
| ABL. | eundō | — |

526.

 PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become, happen*

| | INDICATIVE | | SUBJUNCTIVE | IMPERATIVE | |
|-------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| PRES. | fiō fīs fit | —— —— fiunt | fiam | fī | fīte |
| IMPF. | fiēbam | | fierem | | |
| FUT. | fiam, fiēs, etc. | | —— | | |
| PERF. | factus sum | | factus sim | | |
| PLUP. | factus eram | | factus essem | | |
| F. P. | factus erō | | | | |

| | INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLES |
|-------|-------------|----------------|
| PRES. | fieri | GER. faciendus |
| PERF. | factus esse | PERF. factus |
| FUT. | factum iri | |

 527. PRIN. PARTS : *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry*

| | INDICATIVE | | | |
|-------|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| PRES. | ferō fers fert | ferimus fertis ferunt | feror ferris, re fertur | ferimur feriminī feruntur |

| | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|-------|-----------------|-------------------|
| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Singular</i> |
| IMPF. | ferēbam | ferēbar |
| FUT. | feram, ēs, etc. | ferar, ēris, etc. |
| PERF. | tuli | lātus sum |
| PLUP. | tuleram | lātus eram |
| F. P. | tulerō | lātus erō |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | |
|-------|---------|-------------|
| PRES. | feram | ferar |
| IMPF. | ferrem | ferrer |
| PERF. | tulerim | lātus sim |
| PLUP. | tulisse | lātus essem |

IMPERATIVE

| | | | | |
|-------|-------|---------|--------|----------|
| PRES. | fer | ferite | ferre | ferimini |
| FUT. | fertō | fertōte | fertor | |
| | fertō | feruntō | fertor | feruntor |

INFINITIVE

| | | |
|-------|--------------|------------|
| PRES. | ferre | ferri |
| PERF. | tulisse | lātus esse |
| FUT. | lāturus esse | lātum iri |

PARTICIPLES

| | | |
|-------|---------|---------------|
| PRES. | ferēns | — |
| FUT. | lāturus | GER. ferendus |
| | — | PERF. lātus |

GERUND

| | |
|------|----------|
| GEN. | ferendī |
| DAT. | ferendō |
| ACC. | ferendum |
| ABL. | ferendō |

SUPINE

| |
|-------|
| — |
| — |
| lātum |
| lātū |

528.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRIN. PARTS : hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *urge, entreat*
 vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
 potior, potirī, potītus sum, *get possession of*

INDICATIVE

| | | | | |
|-------|---------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| PRES. | hortor | vereor | sequor | potior |
| | hortāris, re | verēris, re | sequeris, re | potīris, re |
| | hortātur | verētur | sequitur | potitur |
| | hortāmur | verēmur | sequimur | potimur |
| | hortāminī | verēminī | sequiminī | potiminī |
| | hortantur | verentur | sequuntur | potiuntur |
| IMPF. | hortābar | verēbar | sequēbar | potiēbar |
| FUT. | hortābor | verēbor | sequar | potiar |
| PERF. | hortātus sum | veritus sum | secūtus sum | potītus sum |
| PLUP. | hortātus eram | veritus eram | secūtus eram | potītus eram |
| F. P. | hortātus erō | veritus erō | secūtus erō | potītus erō |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | | | |
|-------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| PRES. | horter | verear | sequar | potiar |
| IMPF. | hortārer | verērer | sequerer | potīrer |
| PERF. | hortātus sim | veritus sim | secūtus sim | potītus sim |
| PLUP. | hortātus essem | veritus essem | secūtus essem | potītus essem |

IMPERATIVE

| | | | | |
|-------|----------|---------|----------|---------|
| PRES. | hortāre | verēre | sequere | potīre |
| FUT. | hortātor | verētor | sequitor | potītor |

INFINITIVE

| | | | | |
|-------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| PRES. | hortārī | verērī | sequī | potīrī |
| PERF. | hortātus esse | veritus esse | secūtus esse | potītus esse |
| FUT. | hortātūrus esse | veritūrus esse | secūtūrus esse | potitūrus esse |

PARTICIPLES

| | | | | |
|-------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| PRES. | hortāns | verēns | sequēns | potiēns |
| FUT. | hortātūrus | veritūrus | secūtūrus | potitūrus |
| PERF. | hortātus | veritus | secūtus | potītus |
| GER. | hortandus | verendus | sequendus | potiendus |

GERUND

hortandī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| hortātum | veritum | secūtum | potitum |
| hortātū | veritū | secūtū | potitū |

529. FIRST OR ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

| | |
|--------------|---|
| PRES. | amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i> |
| IMPF. | amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i> |
| FUT. | amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i> |
| PERF. | amātūrus fui, <i>I have been or was about to love</i> |
| PLUP. | amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i> |
| F. P. | amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| PRES. | amātūrus sim |
| IMPF. | amātūrus essem |
| PERF. | amātūrus fuerim |
| PLUP. | amātūrus fuisset |

INFINITIVE

| | |
|--------------|------------------------|
| PRES. | amātūrus esse |
| PERF. | amātūrus fuisse |

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

| | |
|--------------|---|
| PRES. | monitūrus sum, <i>I am about to advise</i> |
| | ductūrus sum, <i>I am about to lead</i> |
| | captūrus sum, <i>I am about to take</i> |
| | auditūrus sum, <i>I am about to hear, etc.</i> |

530. SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

| | |
|--------------|---|
| PRES. | amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i> |
| IMPF. | amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i> |
| FUT. | amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i> |

INDICATIVE— *Continued*

- PERF. **amandus** fui, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 PLUP. **amandus** fueram, *I had had to be loved*
 F. P. **amandus** fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. **amandus** sim
 IMPF. **amandus** essem
 PERF. **amandus** fuerim
 PLUP. **amandus** fuisset

INFINITIVE

- PRES. **amandus** esse, *to have to be loved*
 PERF. **amandus** fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. **monendus** sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
 dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
 capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
 audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard, etc.*

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Nominative Case. — The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case. [34, 1.]

A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

Genitive Case. — The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun. [38.]

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive), denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends. [251.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus, maximus, summus, tantus*. [303.]

Dative Case. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. [58, 2.]

The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites. [163.]

The dative is used with *est, sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. [231.]

The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it. [295.]

Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative case. [343.]

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, often govern the dative. [394.]

Accusative Case. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. [46, 2.]

The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [184, 1.]

Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the accusative without a preposition. [237, 2.]

Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. [245.]

Ablative Case. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [94.]

Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. [118.]

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [131.]

The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. [142.]

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. [148.]

The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used. [157.]

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used. [211.]

Place where is expressed by the ablative with *in*; but with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the locative. [237, 1.]

Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 3.]

After comparatives with *quam* the same case is used after *quam* as before it. After comparatives without *quam* the ablative is used. [260.]

The measure of difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition. [267.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *maḡnus*, *maximus*, *summus*, *tantus*. [303.]

The ablative is used with the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, and their compounds. [337.]

Locative Case. — Place where is expressed by the locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*. [237, 1.]

Agreement. — A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. [46, 1.]

An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains. [58, 1.]

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [65.]

A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. [184, 3.]

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent. [197.]

The Subjunctive. — Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with *ut* if the clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *nē* if the purpose clause is negative. [351.]

Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative. [358.]

Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion. [364.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

The subjunctive with *nē*, that, or *ut*, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing. [385.]

In a *cum* clause expressing time, the verb is usually sub-

junctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used. [387, 1.]

In a *cum* clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive. [387, 2.]

Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without *utinam*; wishes hopeless in present time by *utinam* with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by *utinam* with the pluperfect subjunctive. [425.]

Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. [329.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive. [430.]

Supine. — The supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. [435.]

Sequence of Tenses. — A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

| | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| <i>abl.</i> | ablative. | <i>loc.</i> | locative. |
| <i>acc.</i> | accusative. | <i>m.</i> | masculine. |
| <i>adj.</i> | adjective. | <i>n., neut.</i> | neuter. |
| <i>adv.</i> | adverb. | <i>neg.</i> | negative. |
| <i>comp.</i> | comparative. | <i>nom.</i> | nominative. |
| <i>conj.</i> | conjunction. | <i>num.</i> | numeral. |
| <i>dat.</i> | dative. | <i>part.</i> | participle. |
| <i>def.</i> | defective. | <i>pass.</i> | passive. |
| <i>dem.</i> | demonstrative. | <i>perf.</i> | perfect. |
| <i>dep.</i> | deponent. | <i>pl., plur.</i> | plural. |
| <i>determ.</i> | determinative. | <i>pr.</i> | proper. |
| <i>dim.</i> | diminutive. | <i>prep.</i> | preposition. |
| <i>f.</i> | feminine. | <i>pres.</i> | present. |
| <i>fut.</i> | future. | <i>pron.</i> | pronoun. |
| <i>gen.</i> | genitive. | <i>refl.</i> | reflexive. |
| <i>impers.</i> | impersonal. | <i>rel.</i> | relative. |
| <i>indecl.</i> | indeclinable. | <i>sing.</i> | singular. |
| <i>indef.</i> | indefinite. | <i>subjv.</i> | subjunctive. |
| <i>interrog.</i> | interrogative. | <i>subst.</i> | substantive. |
| <i>intr.</i> | intransitive. | <i>sup.</i> | superlative. |
| <i>irr.</i> | irregular. | <i>tr.</i> | transitive. |

VOCABULARY

LATIN — ENGLISH

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- ā, ab, prep. w. abl.,** from, by, with, at, on, in.
- abditus.** See **abdō.**
- abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus (ab + dō, place), tr.,** put away, conceal.
- abiciō, ere, abiēcī, abiectus, tr.,** throw, hurl.
- ablātus.** See **auferō.**
- absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, intr.,** be away, be distant, be absent.
- ac.** See **atque.**
- Acca, ae, f., pr. name,** Acca Larentia, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.
- accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus (ad + cēdō), intr.,** go near, come near, approach; *w. ad and acc.*
- accendō, ere, accendī, accēnsus (ad + candeō, glow), tr.,** set on fire; **accēnsus,** burning.
- accidō, ere, accidī, — (ad + cadō), intr.,** happen.
- acciō, ire, accivī, accītus (ad + cieō, set in motion), tr.,** summon, invite.
- accipiō, ere, accēpi, acceptus (ad + capiō), tr.,** receive; suffer, undergo.
- acclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + clāmō, cry), tr.,** shout, cry out.
- acclivis, e (ad + clivus, slope), rising,**
- acclivitās, ātis (acclivis), f.,** ascent, slope.
- accurrō, ere, accurrī, accursum (ad + currō, run), intr.,** run up, hasten to.
- accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + causa), tr.,** accuse, reproach.
- ācer, ācris, ācre,** sharp, keen, eager, fierce.
- ācerrimē.** See **ācritēr.**
- aciēs, aciēi, f.,** edge; line of battle.
- ācritēr (ācer), adv.,** sharply, eagerly, fiercely; *comp. ācrius; sup. ācerrimē.*
- āctus.** See **agō.**
- ad, prep. w. acc.,** to, toward, at, near, against; according to; *w. numerals,* about.
- addō, addere, addidī, additus (ad + dō, place), tr.,** add.
- addūcō, ere, addūxi, adductus (ad + dūcō), tr.,** lead to, lead, influence.
- adeō, adire, adiī, aditum (ad + eō), intr.,** go to, approach.
- adficiō, ere, adfēcī, adfectus (ad + faciō), tr.,** affect; **poenā —,** punish.
- adhibeō, ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus (ad + habeō), tr.,** call in, use.
- aditus, ūs (adeō), m.,** approach, access.

- administrō, āre, āvi, ātus** (ad + ministrō, manage), *tr.*, manage, direct, administer.
- adolēscō, ere, adolēvi, adultus** (ad + olēscō, grow), *intr.*, grow up.
- adorior, irī, adortus sum** (ad + orior), *intr.*, attack.
- adōrnō, āre, āvi, ātus** (ad + ōrnō, equip), *tr.*, equip, adorn.
- adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus** (ad + sum), *intr.*, be present, aid.
- Aduatuci, ōrum, m.**, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- adulēscēns, entis** (adolēscō), young; *as subst.*, young man, youth.
- adveniō, ire, advēni, adventum** (ad + veniō), *intr.*, come to, arrive, reach.
- adventus, ūs** (adveniō), *m.*, arrival, approach.
- adversus, a, um** (advertō, turn to), in front, opposite; **adversō colle**, up the hill.
- adversus** (adversus), *prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against, facing.
- aedificium, ī** (aedificō), *n.*, building.
- aedificō, āre, āvi, ātus** (aedis + faciō), *tr.*, build, construct.
- aedis or aedēs, is, f.**, temple; *pl.*, aedēs rēgiae, palace.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum**, sick.
- aegrē** (aeger), *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
- aegritūdō, inis** (aeger), *f.*, sickness, vexation, mortification.
- aequāliter** (aequālis, equal), *adv.*, uniformly, equally.
- aequus, a, um**, equal, favorable.
- aestās, ātis, f.**, summer.
- aetās, ātis, f.**, age.
- ager, agrī, m.**, field, land, territory.
- agger, aggeris** (ad + gerō), *m.*, mound, agger.
- aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum** (ad + gradior, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.
- agmen, agminis** (agō), *n.*, army on the march; **primum agmen**, van; **novissimum agmen**, rear.
- agnōscō, ere, agnōvi, agnitus** (ad + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize.
- agō, ere, ēgi, āctus, tr.**, drive, lead, move forward, do, treat; **triumphum agere**, celebrate a triumph.
- agricola, ae** (ager + colō), *m.*, farmer.
- aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, def.**, say.
- Alba or Alba Longa, ae, f.**, an ancient Latin town.
- Albānus, a, um** (Alba), Alban; *as subst.*, **Albānus, ī, m.**, an Alban.
- albus, a, um**, white.
- aliēnus, a, um** (alius), another's, unfavorable, strange.
- aliquis and aliqui, aliqua, aliquid and aliquod, indef. pron.**, some one, any one.
- alius, alia, aliud**, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . some, some . . . others; **alii aliam in partem**, some in one direction, some in another.
- Allobrogēs, um, m.**, a Celtic tribe of Gaul.
- alō, ere, alui, altus, tr.**, nourish, strengthen.
- altāria, ium, n. pl.**, altar.
- alter, altera, alterum**, the other (of two), another, second.
- altitūdō, inis** (altus), *f.*, height, depth.
- altus, a, um** (alō), high, deep.
- alveus, ī, m.**, basket, trough.

Ambiāni, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgian tribe.
amicitia, ae (amicus), f., friendship, alliance.

amicus, ī (amō), m., friend, ally.

āmittō, ere, āmisi, āmissus (ā + mittō), tr., lose.

amō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., love, like.

āmoveō, ēre, āmōvi, āmōtus (ā + moveō), tr., take away, remove.

amplificō, āre, āvi, ātus (amplus + faciō), tr., increase, extend.

amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample.

Amūlius, ī, m., king of Alba Longa.

ancile, is, n., a small oval shield.

angustiae, ārum (angustus), f. pl., narrowness, narrow pass. [steep.]

angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted;

animadvertō, ere, animadverti, animadversus (animus + advertō, turn toward), tr., turn one's mind to, notice; **animadvertere in**, punish.

animal, ālis (anima, life), n., animal.

animus, ī, m., mind, disposition, courage, spirit; **in animō esse, in animō habēre**, have in mind, intend.

annus, ī, m., year.

ante, adv. and prep. w. acc., before.

antepōnō, ere, anteposui, antepositus (ante + pōnō), tr., put before.

antequam, conj., before, until.

antiquitus (antiquus), adv., in former times, anciently.

antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.

ānulus, ī, m., ring.

anxius, a, um (angō, vex), troubled, anxious.

aperiō, īre, aperui, apertus, tr., open.

apertus, a, um (aperiō), open.

appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., call, name.

Appius, ī, m., a Roman surname.

apprehendō, ere, apprehendi, apprehēnsus (ad + prehendō, seize), tr., lay hold of, seize.

appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum (ad + propinquus), intr., w. dat., approach, come near.

apud, prep. w. acc., among, in the presence of, near.

aqua, ae, f., water. [Gaul.]

Aquilēia, ae, f., a town of Cisalpine aquilō, ōnis, m., the north wind.

Aquitānia, ae, f., a division of southern Gaul.

Aquitānus, ī, m., an Aquitanian.

āra, ae, f., altar.

Arar, Araris, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arbitr, arbitri, m., witness.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum (arbitr), intr., think, consider, suppose.

arceō, ēre, arcui, —, tr., shut up, hinder, prevent.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a German king.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms, weapons.

armilla, ae, f., bracelet.

armō, āre, āvi, ātus (arma), tr., arm, equip.

arō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., plow.

ars, artis, f., art.

artūs, artuum, m. pl., joints.

arx, arcis (arceō), f., stronghold, citadel.

asper, aspera, asperum, rough, fierce.

āstūtia, ae (āstūtus, cunning), f., shrewdness, cunning.

asylum, ī, n., asylum, place of refuge.

at, conj., but, yet.

Athēnae, ārum, f., Athens.

atque, ac, conj., and.

Atrebās, ātis, m., one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe.

attingō, ere, attingi, attactus (ad + tangō, touch), *tr.*, touch, join, border on. [astounded.

attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck, auctoritās, ātis (augeō), *f.*, authority, influence, reputation.

audācter (audāx), adv., boldly, courageously; *comp.* audācius; *sup.* audācissimē.

audāx, adj., bold.

Audecumborius, ī, m., an ambassador of the Remi.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, intr., dare.

audiō, īre, audīvi, audītus, tr., hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (ab + ferō), tr., take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus, tr., increase.

augurium, ī (augur, soothsayer), n., divination, augury.

aureus, a, um (aurum, gold), golden.

auspiciū, ī (avis + speciō, look), n., divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. See audeō.

autem, conj., but, moreover, however.

auxilium, ī, n., help, aid.

Aventinus, a, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

āvertō, ere, āverti, āversus (ab + vertō), tr., turn away, remove.

avis, is, f., bird.

avus, ī, m., grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, f., a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, e, Balearic.

Belgae, ārum, m. pl., Belgians, a tribe of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, a, um (bellum), warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

bellum, ī, n., war; **bellum inferre**, make war; **bellum gerere**, wage war.

bene (bonus), adv., well; *comp.* melius, *sup.* optimē.

beneficiū, ī (bene + faciō), n., favor, service.

benignē (benignus, kind), adv., kindly.

bibō, ere, bibi, —, tr., drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, n., a town of the Remi.

Bōiī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe associated with the Helvetiī.

bonus, a, um, good.

Bratuspantium, ī, n., a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, e, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (brevis), f., shortness.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, tr., fall, die, perish.

caedēs, is (caedō), f., slaughter.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus, tr., cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, ī, n., sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, m., a family name of the Julian gens; Gāius Iūlius Caesar,

100-44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

calamitās, ātis, f., disaster, defeat.

campus, ī, m., plain.

capiō, ere, cēpi, captus, tr., take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, ī, n., the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captivus, ī (capiō), m., captive.

caput, capitis, n., head.

cārē (cārus), adv., dearly.

careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, intr. w. abl., be without, be in need of, lack.

carpentum, *i, n.*, two-wheeled carriage.

carrus, *i, m.*, wagon, cart.

Carthāgō, *inis, f.*, a great Phoenician city on the northern coast of Africa.

cārus, *a, um*, dear.

casa, *ae, f.*, hut.

Cassius, *i, m.*, a Roman name.

castellum, *i (dim. of castrum), n.*, fort, redoubt.

Casticus, *i, m.*, a Sequanian chief.

castra, *orum, n. pl.*, camp.

cāsus, *ūs (cadō), m.*, falling, chance, misfortune.

catulus, *i, m.*, cub.

causa, *ae, f.*, reason, cause, case; **quā dē causā**, why, for this reason; **causā**, *w. gen.*, for the sake of, for, on account of; **causam dicere**, plead a case.

cavea, *ae (cavus, hollow), f.*, cage.

cecidī. See **cadō**.

cēdō, *ere, cessī, cessum, intr.*, go, yield, retire, retreat.

celer, *celeris, celere*, swift, quick.

celeritās, *ātis (celer), f.*, speed, quickness.

celeriter (celer), *adv.*, quickly, swiftly; *comp. celerius; sup. celerrimē*.

Celtae, *arum, m.*, Celts, one of the three great peoples of Gaul.

cēna, *ae, f.*, meal, dinner.

centum, *indecl.*, hundred.

centuria, *ae (centum), f.*, a division of the people, or army, containing one hundred; century.

centuriō, *ōnis (centuria), m.*, centurion, commander of a century.

certāmen, *inis (certō, contend), n.*, contest.

certus, *a, um (cernō, perceive)*, certain, appointed; **certiōrem facere**, inform.

cēteri, *ae, a, pl.*, the rest, the others.

cibus, *i, m.*, food.

Cimbri, *orum, m.*, a Germanic tribe.

circā, *prep. w. acc.*, around, about.

circiter, *prep. w. acc.*, about, nearly.

circum, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, about, around.

circumdō, **circumdare**, **circumdedī**, **circumdatus (circum + dō)**, *tr.*, surround.

circumiciō, *ere, circumiēcī, circum- iectus (circum + iaciō)*, *tr.*, throw about, place around.

circumveniō, *ire, circumvēnī, circum- ventus (circum + veniō)*, *tr.*, come around, surround.

cis, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.

citerior, **citerius**, hither.

citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of.

cīvicus, *a, um (cīvis)*, civic.

cīvis, *is, m. and f.*, citizen. [state.

cīvitās, **ātis (cīvis)**, *f.*, citizenship,

clādēs, *is, f.*, disaster, destruction.

clāmitō, **āre, āvī, ātus (clāmō, cry out)**, *tr.*, cry out, shout.

clāmor, **ōris (clāmō, cry out)**, *m.*, shouting, cry.

classis, *is, f.*, fleet.

Claudia, *ae, f.*, sister of Appius Claudius Pulcher.

Claudius, *i, m.*, a Roman family name; **Appius Claudius Pulcher**, consul 249 B.C.

claudō, *ere, clausī, clausus, tr.*, shut, close.

clēmēntia, *ae (clēmēns, mild), f.*, kindness, mildness.

cliēns, **clientis**, *m. and f.*, dependent, vassal.

coepī, **coepisse**, **coepturus sum**, *def.*, began.

cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus (con + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize, learn, discover, ascertain.
cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōactus (con + agō), drive together, collect, force, compel.
cohors, cohortis, f., cohort (the tenth part of a legion).
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum (con + hortor), *tr.*, exhort, encourage.
collis, is, m., hill.
colō, ere, coluī, cultus, tr., cultivate, worship.
commeātus, ūs, m., provisions, supplies.
comminus (con + manus), *adv.*, hand to hand.
committō, ere, commisi, commissus (con + mittō), *tr.*, commit, intrust; join, begin (battle).
commodē (commodus, useful), *adv.*, advantageously, easily.
commoveō, ēre, commōvī, commōtus (con + moveō), *tr.*, to move, influence, disturb.
compār, comparis (con + pār), fitting, suitable.
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + parō), *tr.*, prepare, provide.
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus (con + pleō, fill), *tr.*, fill up, complete.
complūrēs, a, many, very many, a great many.
comprehendō, ere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus (con +prehendō, seize), *tr.*, seize, arrest.
con. See *cum*.
concēdō, ere, concessī, concessum (con + cēdō), *intr.*, yield, grant, allow, permit.

concidō, ere, concidī, — (con + cadō), *intr.*, fall, be killed.
concidō, ere, concidī, concisus (con + caedō, slay), *tr.*, cut down, kill.
conciliō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., gain, win, procure.
concilium, ī, n., assembly, council.
condemnō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + damnō), *tr.*, condemn.
condiciō, ōnis (condicō, agree), *f.*, agreement, proposal, terms.
condō, ere, condidī, conditus (con + dō, put), *tr.*, found, establish.
condūcō, ere, condūxī, conductus (con + dūcō), *tr.*, bring together, hire.
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (con + ferō), *tr.*, bring together, gather; *sē cōnferre*, betake one's self, go.
cōnfortus, a, um (cōnferciō, crowd), crowded, dense.
cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (con + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete, furnish, wear out.
cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + firmō, strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen, establish, assure, declare, encourage.
cōnfigō, ere, cōnfixī, cōnfectum, intr., contend, fight.
cōnfugiō, ere, cōnfūgī, —, intr., flee.
congressus, ūs (congrēdiōr, meet), *m.*, meeting.
congruō, ere, congruī, —, intr., agree, tally.
coniciō, ere, coniectī, coniectus (con + iaciō), *tr.*, throw, hurl.
coniungō, ere, coniūnxī, coniūctus (con + iungō), *tr.*, join.
coniūnx, coniugis (coniungō), *f.*, wife.

coniūrātiō, ōnis (coniūrō), f., conspiracy.

coniūrātus, ī (coniūrō), m., conspirator.

coniūrō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.

conlātus. See *cōnferō*.

conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + locō, place), *tr.*, place, put, station.

conloquium, ī (conloquor), n., interview, conference.

conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer.

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, tr., attempt, try.

cōnsanguineus, ī (con + sanguis, blood), *m.*, relative, kinsman.

cōnscrībō, ere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus (con + scrībō), *tr.*, levy, enroll.

cōnsecrō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate.

cōnsentiō, īre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsus (con + sentiō, feel), *intr.*, agree, conspire.

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum (con + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.

cōnserō, ere, cōnseruī, cōnseruus (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).

cōnservō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + servō), tr., keep safe, preserve.

cōnsiderō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., consider, examine, look at closely.

cōnsidō, ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum (con + sidō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.

cōnsilium, ī (cōnsulō), n., plan, advice, prudence.

cōnsimilis, e (con + similis), very like.

cōnsistō, ere, cōnstiti, — (con +

sistō, place), intr., take a stand, hold a position, stop.

cōnspectus, ūs (cōnspiciō), m., sight, view.

cōnspiciō, ere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus (con + speciō, look), *tr.*, see, perceive.

cōnstantia, ae (cōnstō, stand), f., firmness.

cōnstituō, ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.

cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, be accustomed.

cōnsuētūdō, inis (cōnsuēscō), f., custom, habit.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., consul.

cōnsulō, ere, cōnsulūī, cōnsultus, tr., ask advice, consult.

contendō, ere, contendī, contentum (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.

contentiō, ōnis (contendō), f., contest, controversy.

continenter (contineō), adv., continually, constantly.

contineō, ēre, continuī, contentus (con + teneō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, hem in, keep.

cōntiō, ōnis (conveniō), f., meeting.

contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., against, opposite.

contulī. See *cōnferō*.

cōnūbium, ī (con + nūbō, marry), f., marriage.

conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventum (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers. convenit*, it is fit, agreed.

convertō, ere, converti, conversus (con + vertō), *tr.*, turn (about), change; **signa convertere**, face about.

convocō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + vocō), *tr.*, call together, summon.

coorior, iri, coortus sum (con + orior), *intr.*, rise, break out.

cōpia, ae, f., supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.

Corinthus, i, f., Corinth.

Cornēlius, i, m., the name of a Roman family. *See* Cossus.

cornū, ūs, n., horn, flank, wing.

corōna, ae, f., crown.

corpus, corporis, n., body.

corruō, ere, corruī, — (con + ruō, fall), *intr.*, fall, be slain.

Cossus, i, m., Aulus Cornēlius Cossus, consul 343 B.C.

cottidiānus, a, um (cottidiē), daily.

cottidiē, adv., daily.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, tr. and intr., *w. dat.*, believe, trust.

cremō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., burn.

creō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., appoint, choose.

Crētēs, Crētum, m. pl., Cretans.

crux, crucis, f., cross, gallows.

culpō, āre, āvi, ātus (culpa, fault), *tr.*, blame.

cultus, see colō.

cum, prep. w. abl., with; *in composition, con-, co-; conj.*, when, since, although, because.

cupidus, a, um (cupiō), desirous, eager.

cupiō, ere, cupiīvi or cupiī, cupītus, tr., wish, desire, be eager for.

cūr, adv., why.

cūra, ae, f., care.

Curēs, Curium, f. pl., a Sabine town.

cūria, ae, f., senate

cursus, ūs (currō, run), *m.*, course.

curūlis, e (currus, chariot), curule.

cūstōdia, ae (cūstōs, guard), *f.*, guard.

cūstōdiō, ire, cūstōdivi, cūstōditus (cūstōs, guard), *tr.*, watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ōnis (damnō), *f.*, condemnation.

damnō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., condemn, sentence.

dē, prep. w. abl., from, down from; concerning, in regard to, for; about.

dea, ae, f., goddess.

dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus (dē + habeō), *tr.*, owe; *with inf.*, ought.

decem, indecl., ten.

dēcernō, ere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus (dē + cernō, separate), *tr.*, decide, decree.

dēcertō, āre, āvi, ātum (dē + certō, contend), *intr.*, fight, contend.

Decius, i, m., Pūblius Decius Mūs, consul 340 B.C.

dēclivis, e (dē + clivus, slope), sloping.

dēcrēvi. See dēcernō.

dēcurrō, ere, dē(cu)curri, dēcursum (dē + currō, run), *intr.*, run down, hasten down.

dēditiō, ōnis (dēdō), *f.*, surrender.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē + dō), *tr.*, give up, surrender.

dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, tr., defend, protect.

dēfēnsor, ōris (dēfendō), *m.*, defender.

dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus (dē + ferō), *tr.*, carry off; bestow, confer.

dēficiō, ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus (dē + faciō), *tr. and intr.*, fail, be lacking, revolt. [thereafter.

dēinceps, adv., successively, next,

deinde (dē + inde), *adv.*, afterwards, next.

dēlābor, dēlābī, dēlāpsus sum (dē + lābor, slip), *intr.*, glide or fall down.

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., please, delight.

dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlectus (dē + legō, collect), *tr.*, select, choose.

Delphī, ōrum, m., Delphi.

dēmīttō, ere, dēmīsi, dēmissus (dē + mittō), *tr.*, send down, let down; sē dēmittere, jump.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus (dē + mōnstrō, show), *tr.*, point out, show, mention.

dēnique, adv., at last, finally.

dēpōnō, ere, dēposui, dēpositus (dē + pōnō), *tr.*, lay down, give up.

dēpopulor, āri, ātus sum (dē + populor), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, ōris (dēprecor, mediate), *m.*, intercessor; eō dēprecātore, through his mediation.

dēscendō, ere, dēscendī, dēscēsum (dē + scandō, climb), *intr.*, descend.

dēscribō, ere, dēscripsi, dēscriptus (dē + scribō), *tr.*, describe.

dēsistō, ere, dēstiti, — (dē + sistō, stand), *intr.*, cease, leave off.

dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus (dē + sum), *intr.*, be lacking, fail.

deus, ī, m., god.

dēvincō, ere, dēvīcī, dēvictus (dē + vincō), *tr.*, subdue, conquer.

dēvoveō, ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus (dē + voveō), *tr.*, vow, devote.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right; dex-
tra, ae, f., right hand.

dī-. See **dis-**.

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, tr., say, tell, speak; impose (a fine); plead.

dīēs, ēī, m. and f., day.

difficilis, e (dis + facilis), difficult, hard.

difficultās, ātis (difficilis), *f.*, difficulty.

diligenter (diligō, esteem). *adv.*, carefully, attentively.

diligentia, ae (diligō, esteem), *f.*, carefulness, diligence, industry.

dimētiōr, irī, dimēnsus sum, tr., measure.

dimicō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., fight, contend.

dīmīttō, ere, dīmīsi, dīmīssus (dis + mittō), *tr.*, send off, dismiss, let go.

diripiō, ere, diripuī, direptus (dis + rapiō), *tr.*, lay waste, pillage, ravage.

dis-, dī-, inseparable neg. prefix, apart, not, un-.

discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum (dis + cēdō), *intr.*, depart, withdraw, leave.

discipulus, ī (discō), *m.*, pupil.

discō, ere, didicī, —, tr., learn.

discurrō, ere, dis(cu)curri, discursum (dis + currō, run), *intr.*, run in different directions.

dissimilis, e (dis + similis), unlike, dissimilar.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus (dissimilis), *tr.*, conceal, disguise.

distineō, ēre, distinui, distentus (dis + teneō), *tr.*, keep apart.

distribuō, ere, distribuī, distribūtus (dis + tribuō, assign), *tr.*, distribute, divide.

diū, adv., long, for a long time; *comp.* diūtius, *sup.* diūtissimē.

Dīviciācus, ī, m., a chief of the Haedui.

dividō, ere, dīvisi, divīsus, tr., divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, tr., give; **poenās dare,** suffer punishment.
doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, tr., teach, inform. [by trickery.
dolōsē (dolus, trick), adv., craftily,
domesticus, a, um (domus), domestic; from their own country.
dominus, ī, m., master, lord.
domus, ūs or ī, f., house, home; **domī,** at home; **domum, (to)** home, homeward.
dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus (dōnum), tr., present, give.
dōnum, ī (dō), n., gift.
dubius, a, um, doubtful.
ducentī, ae, a (duo + centum), two hundred. [bring.
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, tr., lead.
Duilius, ī, m., Gāius Duilius, a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.
dum, conj., while, until.
Dumnorix, īgis, m., brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.
duo, duae, duo, two.
duodecim, indecl., twelve.
duodēvigintī, indecl., eighteen.
dux, ducis (dūcō), m., guide, leader, general.

E

ē. See ex.
ēditus, a, um (ēdō), high, elevated.
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus (ex + dō), tr., give out, give birth to, bear.
edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, tr., eat.
ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus (ex + dūcō), tr., lead out, lead.
effeō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus (ex + ferō), tr., carry out.
effugiō, ere, effūgī, — (ex + fugiō), tr. and intr., escape.

effundō, ere, effūdī, effusus (ex + fundō, pour), tr., pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Egeria, ae, f., a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgī. See agō.

ego, meī, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, intr., go out, come forth.

eius. See is.

ēliciō, ere, ēlicuī, ēlicitus (ex + laciō, allure), tr., lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (ex + legō, choose), tr., select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum (ex + migrō, migrate), intr., emigrate, remove.

enim, conj., for.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + nūntiō), tr., announce, reveal.

eō, ire, īī, itum, intr., go.

eō (is), adv., there, to that place, thither.

eques, equitis (equus), m., horseman; *pl.*, cavalry, cavalymen.

equester, equestris, equestre (eques), of the cavalry, equestrian.

equitātus, ūs (eques), m., cavalry.

equus, ī, m., horse.

ēripiō, ere, ēripiū, ēreptus (ex + rapiō), tr., snatch away, save.

erō, eris, etc. See sum.

ēruptiō, ōnis (ērumpō, break forth), f., breaking out, sally.

esse. See sum.

ēsse. See edō.

et, conj., and; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.
etiam (et + iam), conj., besides, still,
Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe. [even.

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum (ex + vādō, go), intr., go out, escape.

ex or **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, of ;
ūnā ex parte, on one side ; **ex**
itinere, on the march.

excōgitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**ex** + **cōgitō**,
 think), *tr.*, think out, contrive.

exeō, **exīre**, **exiī**, **exitūrus** (**ex** + **eō**),
intr., go out, depart, leave.

exercitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**exerceō**,
 train), *tr.*, exercise, train.

exercitus, **ūs** (**exerceō**, train), *m.*, army.

existimō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**ex** + **aes-**
timō, consider), *tr.*, think, suppose,
 believe.

expeditus, **a, um** (**expediō**, free), un-
 incumbered, without baggage.

expellō, **ere**, **expulī**, **expulsus** (**ex** +
pellō) *tr.*, drive out, expel.

explōrātor, **ōris** (**explōrō**), *m.*, scout.

explōrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, search,
 ascertain, reconnoiter.

expōnō, **ere**, **exposuī**, **expositus** (**ex**
 + **pōnō**), *tr.*, expose, abandon.

expositiō, **ōnis** (**expōnō**), *f.*, exposure,
 abandonment.

expugnō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**ex** + **pugnō**),
tr., capture, take by storm, storm.

expectō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**ex** + **spectō**),
tr., look, wait for, await, expect,
 wait to see.

extinguō, **ere**, **extinxī**, **extinctus**
 (**ex** + **stinguō**, put out), *tr.*, ex-
 tinguish, destroy, kill.

exterus, **extera**, **exterus**, outer ;
comp. exterior, *sup.* **extrēmus**, last,
 end of.

extrā, *prep. w. acc.*, outside of, beyond.

extrēmus. See **exterus**.

F

faber, **fabrī**, *m.*, mechanic, workman,
 artisan.

fabricō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**faber**), *tr.*,
 make, construct, build.

fābula, *ae* (for, speak), *f.*, story.

facile (**facilis**), *adv.*, easily ; *comp.*
facilius, *sup.* **facillimē**.

facilis, *e* (**faciō**), easy.

faciō, **ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *tr.*, make, do,
 form, build ; **verba facere**, speak ;
proelium facere, fight a battle.

factum, *i* (**faciō**), *n.*, deed.

fallō, **ere**, **fefellī**, **falsus**, *tr.*, deceive ;
spem sē fefellisse, that they were
 disappointed in their hope.

familia, *ae* (**famulus**, slave), *f.*,
 household, vassals.

fāstus, **a, um** (**fās**, right), legal, court—.

Faustulus, *i*, *m.*, the shepherd who
 brought up Romulus and Remus.

fefellī. See **fallō**.

fēmina, *ae, f.*, woman.

ferāx, **ferācis** (**ferō**), fertile, pro-
 ductive.

ferē, *adv.*, nearly, about, almost.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *tr.*, bear, carry ;
lēgem ferre, propose, institute a law.

ferreus, **a, um** (**ferrum**, iron), (of) iron ;
ferreae manūs, grappling-irons.

fertilitās, **ātis** (**fertilis**, fertile), *f.*,
 fertility.

ferus, **a, um**, fierce, wild, barbarous.

fidēs, **eī** (**fidō**, trust), *f.*, faith, con-
 fidence, trust ; in **fidem venīre**, put
 one's self under the protection of.

fidus, **a, um**, faithful, loyal.

filia, *ae, f.*, daughter.

filius, *i, m.*, son.

finis, *is, m.*, limit, end, boundary ;
pl., territory.

finitimus, **a, um** (**finis**), adjoining,
 neighboring ; *as subst.*, **finitimus**, *i*,
m., neighbor.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (*used as passive of faciō*), be made, become; **certior fieri**, be informed.

flāmen, flāminis, m., Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

flūmen, flūminis (fluō), n., river.

fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxus, intr., flow.

foculus, i (dim. of focus, hearth), m., fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring.

fore = futūrum esse.

foret = esset.

fōrma, ae, f., shape, form.

fors, fortis, f., chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effusus**, happened to have overflowed.

fortis, e, brave.

fortiter (fortis), adv., bravely.

fortūna, ae (fors), f., fortune, good fortune.

forum, i, n., market place, forum.

fossa, ae (fodiō, dig), f., ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

frūmentārius, a, um (frūmentum), of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.

frūmentum, i (fruo), n., grain.

fruo, frui, fructus sum, intr., w. abl., enjoy.

fuga, ae, f., flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight.

fugiō, ere, fugi, —, intr., flee, run away.

fulmen, inis (fulgeō, flash), n., thunderbolt, lightning.

fūmus, i, m., smoke.

fūnāle, is (fūnis, cord), n., torch.

funditor, ōris (funda, sling), m., slinger. [madness.]

furor, ōris (furō, rage), m., rage,

fūrtum, i (fūr, thief), n., theft.

futūrus. See sum.

G

G. = Gāius, i, m., a Roman name.

Galba, ae, m.: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Suesiones.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, Gallic; as subst.,

Gallus, i, m., a Gaul.

Garumna, ae, f., a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.

Gaurus, i, m., a mountain of Campania.

geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; as subst., **geminī, ōrum, m. pl.**, twins.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.

gēns, gentis (gignō, bear), f., tribe, nation, race.

genus, generis (gēns), n., kind, class, species.

Germānus, i, m., German.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, tr., bear, carry, carry on, wage; *pass.*, go on, take place; **mārem sē gessit**, bore herself or acted as a mother.

gladius, i, m., sword.

gracilis, e, slender.

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, i, m., Greek.

grātia, ae (grātus), f., favor, influence; kindness; **grātiā, w. gen.**, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

grātulor, āri, ātus sum (grātus), tr., congratulate.

grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

gravis, e, heavy, hard.

graviter (gravis), adv., severely.

H

habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, tr., have, hold; consult (*auspicia*).

Haeduus, ī, m., Haeduan.

Hannibal, alis, m.: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247-183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.

hasta, ae, f., spear.

haud, adv., not.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; as subst., Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., Helvetians.

hiberna, ōrum (hiems), n. pl., winter quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this; the latter; he, she, it.

hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum (hiems), intr., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

hinc (hic), adv., hence; **hinc . . . hinc,** in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.

Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.

hodiē (hic + diēs), adv., to-day.

homō, hominis, m. and f., man, human being.

honor, ōris, m., honor.

hōra, ae, f., hour.

hortor, āri, ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage.

hortus, ī, m., garden.

hospes, hospitīs, m. and f., guest, host.

Hostilius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Hostus Hostilius,** a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostilius,** third king of Rome.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

Hostus. See **Hostilius.**

hūc (hic), adv., hither, to this place.

humilis, e (humus), low.

humus, ī, f., ground; **humī,** on the ground.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, tr., throw, hurl; construct (*aggerem*).

iactiō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), intr., boast, brag.

iam, adv., now, already, soon.

Iāniculum, ī, m., one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

Iānuārius, ī (Iānus), m., January.

Iānus, ī, m., Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

idem, eadem, idem (is + dem), dem. pron. and adj., the same.

identidem, adv., again and again.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

Idūs, Iduum, f. pl., the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

ignis, is, m., fire.

ignōminia, ae, f., dishonor, disgrace.

ignōrō, āre, āvi, ātus (ignārus, ignorant), tr., not to know.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. and adj., that; he, she, it; the former.

imāgō, inis, f., likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in neg. + bellum), unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbuī, imbūtus, tr., wet; inspire.

immineō, ēre, imminuī, —, intr., overhang.

immittō, ere, immisi, immissus (in + mittō), tr., send into, let into, hurl.

impedimentum, ī (impediō), n., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

- impediō, ire, impedivī, impeditus** (in + pēs), *tr.*, entangle, hinder, impede.
- impellō, ere, impulī, impulsus** (in + pellō), *tr.*, urge, impel, incite.
- impendeō, ēre, —, —** (in + pendeō, hang), *intr.*, overhang.
- imperātor, ōris (imperō), m.**, commander, commander in chief, general.
- imperātum, ī (imperō), n.**, order, command.
- imperium, ī (imperō), n.**, order, command, power, government, rule; nova imperia, revolution.
- imperō, āre, āvī, ātum** (in + parō), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, command, order, rule.
- impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, obtain, secure, gain.
- impetus, ūs (impetō, attack), m.**, assault, attack, onset.
- impius, a, um** (in *neg.* + pius, reverent), wicked, impious.
- impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus** (in + pōnō), *tr.*, place in.
- imprōvisus, a, um** (in *neg.* + prōvisus, foreseen), sudden; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly.
- īmus.** See **īferus**.
- in-**, negative inseparable prefix, un-, not.
- in, prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.**, into, against, toward, forward; *w. abl.*, in, on, upon, over.
- incendō, ere, incendiī, incēnsus** (in + candeō, glow), *tr.*, set fire to, burn.
- incidō, ere, incidī, —** (in + cadō), *intr.*, occur.
- incitō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + citō, move swiftly), *tr.*, urge on, incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.
- inclinō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr.**, bend, incline, yield.
- inclutus, a, um**, famous.
- incola, ae (incolō), m. and f.**, inhabitant.
- incolō, ere, incoluī, —, tr.**, dwell, live.
- incolumis, e**, unharmed, safe.
- incrēdibilis, e** (in *neg.* + crēdibilis, believable), incredible.
- increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus (increpō), tr.**, exclaim, upbraid, taunt.
- increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus, tr.**, sound, scold, exclaim.
- incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + causa), *tr.*, accuse, blame.
- inde, adv.**, thence, thereupon, then.
- index, indicis (indicō), m.**, sign, mark.
- indiciū, ī (indicō), n.**, information; **per indicium**, by informers.
- indicō, āre, āvī, ātus** (in + dicō, declare), *tr.*, announce, reveal.
- indico, ere, indixī, indictus** (in + dicō), *tr.*, proclaim, announce, appoint.
- infēlix, infēlicis** (in *neg.* + fēlix, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.
- īferior.** See **īferus**.
- īfero, īferre, intulī, inlātus** (in + ferō), *tr.*, carry in, bring in; **sē īferre**, betake one's self; **signa īferre**, charge.
- īferus, a, um**, below; *comp.* **īferior**, lower, inferior; *sup.* **īnīmus** or **īmus**, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.
- īfestō, āre, āvī, ātus (īfestus), tr.**, annoy.
- īfestus, a, um**, hostile.
- īnīmus.** See **īferus**.

influo, ere, **inflūxī**, **influxum** (in + fluo), *intr.*, flow into, empty into.

ingēns, **ingentis**, huge, vast.

ingredior, **ingredi**, **ingressus sum** (in + gradior, go), *intr.*, go into, enter.

iniciō, ere, **iniēcī**, **iniectus** (in + iaciō), *tr.*, put in.

inimicus, a, um (in *neg.* + amicus), hostile.

iniquus, a, um (in *neg.* + aequus), unfavorable, disadvantageous.

initium, ī (ineō, begin), *n.*, beginning.

iniūria, ae, *f.*, injury, violence.

inopia, ae (inops, without means), *f.*, want, lack.

inquam, *def.*, say; **inquit**, said he.

inrideō, ēre, **inriśī**, **inrisus** (in + rideō, laugh), *tr.*, laugh at, jeer, ridicule.

insānus, a, um (in *neg.* + sānus, sound), mad.

insequor, **insequī**, **insecūtus sum** (in + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.

insideō, ēre, **insēdī**, **insessus** (in + sedeō), *tr.*, occupy.

insidiae, ārum (insideō), *f. pl.*, ambush, treachery.

insidior, āri, **ātus sum** (insidiae), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, lie in wait for, ambush.

insignis, e (sīgnum), remarkable, distinguished.

insiliō, īre, **insiluī**, **insultus** (in + saliō, leap), *tr.*, leap on.

instar, *n. indecl.*, likeness; **instar mūrī**, like a wall.

instituo, ere, **institui**, **institūtus** (in + statuō), *tr.*, form, establish.

institūtum, ī (instituo), *n.*, purpose, custom, institution.

instruo, ere, **instrūxī**, **instrūctus** (in + struo, build), *tr.*, arrange, draw up, form.

insula, ae, *f.*, island.

insum, **inesse**, **infui**, **infutūrus** (in + sum), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be in, be among.

intellegō, ere, **intellēxī**, **intellēctus** (inter + legō), *tr.*, learn, perceive, know.

intempestus, a, um (in *neg.* + tempus), stormy.

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among, during; **dare inter sē**, exchange; **cohortāti inter sē**, encouraging one another.

intercēdō, ere, **intercessī**, **intercessum** (inter + cēdō), *intr.*, lie between, intervene.

intereā (inter + is), *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile.

interficiō, ere, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** (inter + faciō), *tr.*, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interior, **interius** (inter), inner, interior of; *sup.* **intimus**.

interscindō, ere, **interscidi**, **inter-scissus** (inter + scindō, break down), *tr.*, cut down, destroy.

intersum, **intēresse**, **interfui**, **inter-futūrus** (inter + sum), *intr.*, be among, be present.

intimus. See **interior**.

intrā (inter), *prep. w. acc.*, in, during.

intrō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, enter.

intrōducō, ere, **intrōdūxī**, **intrōductus** (intrō, within + dūcō), *tr.*, lead in.

intrōrsus (intrō, within + **versus**), *adv.*, inside, within.

intulī. See **inferō**.

inūtilis, e (in *neg.* + **ūtilis**), useless.

inveniō, ire, invēnī, inventus (in + **veniō**), *tr. and intr.*, come upon, find.

inveterāscō, ere, inveterāvī, — (in + **veterāscō**, grow old), *intr.*, become established.

invictus, a, um (in *neg.* + **vincō**), unconquered.

invītus, a, um, unwilling.

Iovi. See **Iuppiter**.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, determ. pron., self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; very; even.

irātus, a, um (**irāscor**, be angry), angered, in anger.

is, ea, id, determ. pron. and adj., he, she, it; this, that; **is quī**, he (one, a man) who.

iste, ista, istud, determ. pron. and adj., that (of yours).

ita (is), adv., thus, so.

Italia, ae, f, Italy.

itaque (is), conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.

item (is), adv., likewise, also.

iter, itineris, n., journey, march; road, way, right of way; **iter facere**, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

itum, itūrus. See **eō**.

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, tr., *w. inf.*, order, bid, command.

iūdicium, ī (iūdex, judge), n., judgment, trial.

iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus (iūdex, judge), tr., judge.

iugum, ī (iungō), n., yoke; **sub iugum mittere**, send under the yoke (*made of spears crossed, in token of complete surrender*).

iūmentum, ī (iungō), n., pack animal. **iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūunctus, tr.**, join, fasten together.

iūnior, comp. of iuvenis.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, ae, f., the Jura Mountains, reaching from the Rhine to the Rhone.

iūsiurandum, iūrisiurandī (iūs, law + iūrō, swear), n., oath.

iūstitia, ae (iūstus, just), f., justice, uprightness.

iuvenis, e, young; comp. iūnior; as subst. iuvenis, is, m., young man, youth.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, tr., help, aid.

L

Labiēnus, ī, m., one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, ōris, m., labor, work.

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus (labor), intr., work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.

laccessō, ere, laccessīvī, laccessītus, tr., attack, harass.

lacus, ūs, m., lake.

laetus, a, um, glad.

laevus, a, um, left.

lapis, lapidis, m., stone.

largitiō, ōnis (largior, lavish), f., liberality; bribery.

lateō, ēre, latuī, —, intr., be concealed, lie hid.

Latinus, a, um, Latin.

lātitudō, inis (lātus), f., width, breadth.

Latobrigī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii.

latrō, ōnis, m., robber, brigand.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide.

lātus. See **ferō**.

latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank.
 laudō, āre, āvi, ātus (laus, praise),
tr., praise, commend.
 lēgātīō, ōnis (lēgō, commission), *f.*,
 embassy, deputation.
 lēgātus, ī (lēgō, commission), *m.*, am-
 bassador, envoy; lieutenant.
 legiō, ōnis (lēgō), *f.*, legion.
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *tr.*, choose.
 Lemannus, ī, lacus Lemannus, Lake
 of Geneva.
 lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.
 levitās, ātis (levis, light), *f.*, light-
 ness, fickleness.
 lēx, lēgis (lēgō), *f.*, law; lēgem ferre,
 propose, establish a law.
 liber, librī, *m.*, book.
 liber, libera, liberum, free; *as subst.*
 liberī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
 liberō, āre, āvi, ātus (liber), *tr.*, lib-
 erate, free.
 libertās, ātis (liber), *f.*, freedom,
 liberty.
 licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is
 allowed, permitted.
 lineāmentum, ī (linea, line), *m.*,
 feature.
 littera, ae (linō, smear), *f.*, letter (of
 the alphabet); *pl.*, letters (epistles),
 documents.
 locus, ī, *m.*; *pl.*, locī and loca, place,
 position.
 longē (longus), *adv.*, far, far off.
 longus, a, um, long, distant.
 lūcus, ī, *m.*, grove.
 lūdibrium, ī (lūdus), *n.*, jest, mock-
 ery.
 lūdicer, lūdica, lūdicum (lūdus),
 sportive, playful.
 lūdus, ī, *m.*, play, sport, game.
 lūna, ae, *f.*, moon.

lupa, ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
 lūstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, purify; re-
 view, inspect.
 lūx, lūcia, *f.*, light, daylight; primā
 lūce, at daybreak.
 lūxuria, ae, *f.*, excess, luxury.

M

māchina, ae, *f.*, engine, contrivance.
 magis (*comp. of multum*), *adv.*, more,
 rather.
 magister, magistrī, *m.*, master,
 teacher.
 magistrātus, ūs (magister), *m.*, mag-
 istrate, officer.
 magnitūdō, inis (magnus), *f.*, size,
 greatness.
 magnopere (magnus + opus), *adv.*,
 very greatly.
 magnus, a, um, large, great; *comp.*
 maior, *sup.* maximus; maior nā-
 tū, older; maximus nātū, oldest.
 maior. See magnus.
 male (malus), *adv.*, badly; *comp.*
 peius, *sup.* pessimē.
 mālō, mālle, mālui (magis + volō),
tr. and intr., be more willing, prefer.
 malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.*
 peior, *sup.* pessimus.
 Māmurius, ī, *m.*, a Roman smith in
 the time of Numa.
 mandātum, ī (mandō), *n.*, order,
 command.
 mandō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, order,
 command.
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intr.*,
 remain, stay.
 Mānēs, ium, *m. pl.*, the Manes, shades
 of the dead.
 Mānlius, ī, *m.*, Titus Mānlius Tor-
 quātus, consul 343 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, inis (**mānsuētus**, tame),
f., mildness, clemency.

manus, ūs, f., hand, band; **manūs**
ferreae, grappling irons.

Mārcus, ī, m., a Roman name.

mare, maris, n., sea; **marī**, by sea.

maritimus, a, um (**mare**), of the sea,
 maritime.

Mārs, Martis, m., Mars, the Roman
 god of war.

māter, mātris, f., mother; **mātrēm**
sē gessit, bore herself, acted like, a
 mother.

mātrimōnium, ī (**māter**), *n.*, mar-
 riage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**,
 marry.

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., hasten,
 hurry.

maximē (**maximus**), *adv.*, very
 greatly, especially.

maximus. See **agnus**.

Maximus, ī, m., a Roman cognomen.
 See **Valerius**.

mē, meī. See **ego**.

medius, a, um, middle; **per mediōs**
cūstōdēs, through the midst of the
 guards; **quem medium**, the middle
 of which.

melior. See **bonus**.

melius. See **bene**.

memoria, ae, f., memory.

mēns, mentis, f., mind.

mēnsa, ae, f., table.

mēnsis, is, m., month.

mercātor, ōris (**mercor**, trade), *m.*,
 trader, merchant.

Mercurius, ī, m., Mercury, god of
 trade, and messenger of the gods.

mergō, ere, mersi, mersus, tr., dip, sink.

metus, ūs, m., fear, terror.

meus, a, um, poss. adj., my, mine.

mihi. See **ego**.

mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier.

militāris, e (**mīles**), military.

mille, indecl. adj. and noun, thou-
 sand; *pl.* **millia**, always *noun*;
mille passūs, mille passuum, a
 Roman mile.

minimē (**minimus**). See **parum**.

minimus, a, um (*used as sup. of*
parvus), smallest, least.

minor, minus (*see parvus*), smaller,
 less; **minor nātū**, younger.

minus (*used as comp. of parum*), *adv.*,
 less; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless;
sī minus, if not.

mirābilis, e (**mīror**, wonder), won-
 derful.

mīrāculum, ī (**mīror**, wonder), *n.*,
 wonder, prodigy.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful, surprising.

miser, misera, miserum, wretched,
 poor.

miserē (**miser**), *adv.*, wretchedly.

mītigō, āre, āvī, ātus (**mītis**, mild
 + **agō**), *tr.*, soften, civilize.

mittō, ere, misi, missus, tr., send, hurl.

mōbilitās, ātis (**mōbilis**, change-
 able), *f.*, fickleness.

moenia, moenium, n. pl., walls, for-
 tifications.

moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, tr.,
 warn, advise.

monitus, ūs (**moneō**), *m.*, warning,
 counsel, suggestion.

mōns, montis, m., mountain.

mora, ae, f., delay.

morbus, ī, m., sickness, illness; **morbō**
extinctus, died a natural death.

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum, intr., die.

moror, āri, ātus sum (**mora**), *intr.*,
 delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, tr., move, influence; **castra movēre**, break up camp.

mox, adv., soon.

Mūcius, i, m., the name of a Roman family; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola**, a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.

Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius), Mucian.

mulier, mulieris, f., woman, wife.

multa, ae, f., fine, penalty.

multitūdō, inis (multus), f., numbers, multitude.

multō (abl. of multus), adv., much.

multum (multus), adv., much, greatly.

multus, a, um, much; pl., many;

multā nocte, late at night; **ad**

multam noctem, till late at night.

Mūnātius, i, m., **Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mūnimentum, i (mūniō), n., defense, fortification.

mūniō, ire, mūnīvi or mūnīi, mūnītus, tr., fortify, defend.

mūnitiō, ōnis (mūniō), f., fortification.

mūnus, eris, n., gift, reward.

mūrus, i, m., wall.

N

nactus. See nancīscor.

nam, conj., for.

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born, be produced; rise.

nātiō, ōnis (nāscor), f., nation, tribe, people.

nātū (nāscor), in age; maior nātū, older; **minor nātū,** younger.

nātūra, ae (nāscor), f., nature, character.

nauta, ae (nāvis), m., sailor.

nāvālis, e (nāvis), of ships, naval.

nāvis, is, f., ship.

-ne, enclitic, sign of an interrogative.

nē, conj., not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that.

nec. See neque.

necō, āre, āvī, ātus (nex), tr., kill, put to death.

nefāstus, a, um (nefās, crime), un-hallowed; unpropitious; **diēs ne-**

fāstus, a day on which public business could not be transacted.

negō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr., deny, say . . . not.

negōtium, i, n., business, affair; **quicquam negōtī**, any trouble.

nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), m. and f., no one, nobody.

nemus, nemoris, n., grove.

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant.

neque, nec, conj., and not, but not;

neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

Nervī, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

neuter, neutra, neutrum (nē + uter), neither (of two).

nex, necis, f., death, murder.

niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

nihil, indecl. n., nothing.

nihilō, adv., in no respect; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless. [except.

nisi (nē + sī), conj., if not, unless,

nōbilis, e (nōsco, know), noble.

nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis), f., nobility, nobles.

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, intr.,
w. dat., hurt, injure, harm.

nocturnus, a, um (nox), by night, in the night.

nōlo, nōlle, nōluī (nē + volō), tr. and intr., not to wish, be unwilling;
nōlītē, w. infin., do not.

nōmen, nōminis (nōsco, know), n., name.

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (nōmen), tr., name, call.

nōn, adv., not.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnnūllus, a, um (nōn + nūllus), some, several.

Nōrēia, ae, f., a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.

Nōricus, a, um, Norican; ager Nōri-
cus, a country between the Danube and the Alps.

nōs, nostrum, pers. pron., we, ourselves.

noster, nostra, nostrum (nōs), poss. adj., our, ours; *pl.,* **nostrī, ōrum,** our men, our troops.

novem, indecl., nine.

Noviodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.

novus, a, um, new; novissimum, last; **novissimum agmen,** the rear.

nox, noctis, f., night; **multā nocte,** late at night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūdus, bare), *tr.,* make bare, clear.

nūllus, a, um (nē + ūllus), no, not any, none, no one.

num, interrog. particle, implying the answer 'no.'

Numa, ae, m. See Pompilius.

numerus, ī, m., number.

Numida, ae, m., Numidian.

Numitor, ōris, m., king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.
numquam (nē + umquam, ever), *adv.,* never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntius), tr., report, announce.

nūntius, ī, m., messenger.

nūper, adv., recently, lately.

nusquam (nē + usquam, anywhere), *adv.,* nowhere, on no occasion.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., for, on account of, because of.

obaerātus, ī (ob + aes, money), m., debtor.

obdūcō, ere, obdūxī, obductus (ob + dūcō), tr., extend, make.

obruō, ere, obruī, obrutus (ob + ruō, rush), tr., overwhelm, bury, crush.

obses, obsidis (obsideō), m., hostage, pledge.

obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus (ob + sedeō), tr., besiege.

obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus (ob + sum), w. dat., be against, injure.

obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus (ob + teneō), tr., possess, obtain, retain.

obveniō, ire, obvēnī, obvntum (ob + veniō), intr., come to, meet, come.

occāsus, ūs (occidō, fall), m., setting (of the sun).

occidō, ere, occidī, occisus (ob + caedō, cut down), tr., cut down, kill, slay.

occultus, a, um, hidden; in occultō, concealed.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + capiō), *tr.,* take possession of, seize, occupy.

Oceanus, i, m., ocean.

Ocelum, i, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

octō, indecl., eight.

oculus, i, m., eye.

odium, i (odī, hate), n., hatred, enmity.

omnīnō (omnis), adv., altogether, at all.

omnis, e, all, every, whole.

opiniō, ōnis (opinor, think), f., notion, belief, impression.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., it is necessary, it is proper.

oppidānus, i (oppidum), m., inhabitant of a town, townsman.

oppidum, i, n., walled town.

opprimō, ere, oppressi, oppressus (ob + premō, press), tr., crush, fall upon.

oppugnātiō, ōnis (oppugnō), f., assault, storm, siege.

oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus (ob + pugnō), tr., attack, besiege.

ops, opis, f., aid; *pl.*, resources, wealth.

optimē (optimus), best, excellently. *See bene.*

optimus, a, um, sup. of bonus.

optiō, ōnis (optō), f., choice.

optō, āre, āvi, ātus, wish, choose.

opus, operis, n., work, labor, fortification.

ōrātiō, ōnis (ōrō), f., speech, words.

ōrdinō, āre, āvi, ātus (ōrdō), tr., arrange, regulate.

ōrdō, ordinis, m., line, rank.

Orgetorix, īgis, m., a chief of the Helvetii.

orior, oriri, ortus sum, intr., rise.

ōrnātus, ūs (ōrnō, adorn), m., attire, decoration.

ōrō, āre, āvi, ātus (ōs), tr., beseech, beg.

ortus. See orior.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.

P

P. = Pūblius.

pācō, āre, āvi, ātus (pāx), tr., pacify, subdue.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palūs, ūdis, f., marsh, swamp.

pandō, ere, pandi, passus, tr., spread out; **passis manibus,** with outstretched hands.

pār, paris, equal (to).

parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready.

pāreō, ēre, pārui, pāritūrus, intr. v. dat., obey.

parō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., prepare, provide.

pars, partis, f., part, side, direction.

parum, adv., little; *comp. minus;* *sup. minimē.*

parvulus, a, um (parvus), very little; *as subst. parvulus, i, m.,* little fellow.

parvus, a, um, little, small; comp. minor; sup. minimus.

passus. See pandō and patior.

passus, ūs, m., pace; **mille passūs, pl. millia passuum,** a mile.

pāstor, ōris (pāscō, feed), m., shepherd.

pateō, ēre, patui, —, intr., be open, extend.

pater, patris, m., father.

patior, pati, passus sum, tr., suffer, allow, endure.

patria, ae (patrius), f., country, native land.

patrius, a, um (pater), ancestral.
paucī, ōrum, few.

paulisper, adv., for a short time.

paululum (paulus, small), adv., a
 little, somewhat.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, intr., transgress,
 offend.

pecūnia, ae (pecus), f., money.

pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd.

pedes, peditis (pēs), m., foot soldier;
pl., infantry.

Pedius, ī, m., Quintus Pedius, one of
 Caesar's lieutenants.

peior, comp. of malus.

peius, comp. of male.

pello, ere, pepulī, pulsus, tr., drive
 out, expel, rout, conquer.

per, prep. w. acc., through, over, by,
 by means of.

peragrō, āre, āvī, ātus (per + ager),
tr., wander through, roam over.

perducō, ere, perdūxī, perductus
(per + dūcō), tr., lead, lead through,
 construct.

perennis, e (per + annus), perpetual,
 never failing.

perficiō, ere, perfēcī, perfectus
(per + faciō), tr., accomplish, fin-
 ish, complete.

perfidus, a, um (per + fidus), faith-
 less, treacherous.

periclitōr, āri, ātus sum, tr., make
 trial of, try.

periculum, ī, n., danger.

perītus, a, um, skillful.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissus (per
+ mittō), tr., give up, intrust, permit.

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus
(per + movēō), tr., move, arouse,
 influence, alarm.

perpetuō (perpetuus, continuous),
adv., continually, forever.

perrumpō, ere, perrūpī, perruptus
(per + rumpō, break), tr., break
 through.

perspiciō, ere, perspēxī, perspectus
(per + speciō, see), tr., see through.

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum
(per + suādeō, persuade), tr., w.
dat. of pers., persuade, prevail on.

pertineō, ēre, pertinui, — (per +
teneō), intr., extend, pertain, relate.

pertrāctus. See pertrahō.

pertrahō, ere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus
(per + trahō), tr., drag, lead.

pervenio, ire, pervēni, perventum,
(per + veniō) intr., arrive at, reach.

pēs, pedis, m., foot.

pessimē, sup. of male.

pessimus, sup. of malus.

petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus, tr.,
 aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.

pietās, ātis (pius, pious), f., devo-
 tion, loyalty.

piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.

pignus, pignoris, n., pledge, assur-
 ance.

pilum, ī, n., javelin.

pirus, ī, f., pear tree.

Plancus, ī. See Mūnātius.

plānitēs, ēi (plānus, flat), f. plain,
 level ground.

plēbēs, ēi, or plēbs, plēbis, f., com-
 mon people.

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque,
generally in plural, most, very many.

plūrimus, a, um (sup. of multus),
 most, very many; **plūrimum posse,**
 be very powerful, have most in-
 fluence, be supreme.

plūs, comp. of multum.

plūs, plūris (*comp. of multus*), more;
pl., several, more.

pōculum, ī, n., drinking cup.

poena, ae, f., punishment, penalty;

poenās dare, suffer punishment.

Poenī, ōrum, m. pl., Carthaginians.

polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum, promise.

Pompēius, ī, m., Pompey.

Pompilius, ī, m., Numa Pompilius,
second king of Rome.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, tr., place,
put, pitch (a camp).

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

poposcī. See poscō.

populor, āri, ātus sum (populus),
tr., ravage, lay waste.

populus, ī, m., people.

Porsena, ae, f., king of Clusium in
Etruria.

porta, ae, f., gate, door.

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., carry,
bring.

portus, ūs, m., port, harbor.

poscō, ere, poposcī, —, tr., ask, de-
mand.

possideō, ēre, possēdī, —, tr., hold,
occupy.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able,
can; **plūrimum posse**, be very
powerful.

post, adv., afterwards, later.

post, prep. w. acc., after, behind.

postea (post + is), adv., afterwards.

posterus, a, um, following, next;
comp. posterior; *sup. postrēmus*.

postquam (post + quam), conj.,
after.

postridiē (posterus + diēs), adv., on
the following day.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., demand,
ask.

potēns, potentis, adj. (pres. part. of
possum), powerful, able.

potentātus, ūs (potēns), m., supreme
power, rule.

potestās, ātis (potis, able), f., power,
authority, privilege.

potior, potirī, potitus sum (potis,
able), *intr., w. abl.*, get possession of.

prae, prep. w. abl., before.

praebeō, ēre, praeui, praebitus
(**prae + habeō**), *tr.*, furnish, sup-
ply.

praecinō, ere, praecinui, — (prae +
canō, sing), tr., play before.

praeda, ae, f., booty, spoil.

praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus
(**prae + faciō**), *tr.*, set over, put
in charge of.

praelūceō, ēre, praelūxī, — (prae +
lūceō, shine), intr., shine before.

praemittō, ere, praemisi, praemissus
(**prae + mittō**), *tr.*, send ahead,
dispatch.

praemium, ī, n., reward.

praescribō, ere, praescripsi, prae-
scriptus (prae + scribō), tr., direct,
order.

praesidium, ī (praesideō, defend),
n., guard, defense, garrison.

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, prae-
stitus (prae + stō, stand), intr.,
stand before, surpass, excel; *tr.*,
show.

praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefu-
tūrus (prae + sum), intr., w. dat.,
be at head of, be in charge of, com-
mand. [besides.

praeterea (praeter, beyond + is), adv.,
praeveniō, ire, praevēnī, praeventus
(**prae + veniō**), *tr.*, come before
outstrip, forestall.

prātum, *i*, *n.*, field, meadow.
primō (**primus**), *adv.*, at first.
primum (**primus**), *adv.*, first; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.
primus, *a*, *um*, first; **primā lūce**, at daybreak; **primus dēvicit**, was the first to conquer.
princeps, **principis** (**primus + capiō**), *m.*, chief, leader, author.
prior, **prius** (**prō**), former, previous.
priusquam (**prius**, sooner + **quam**), *conj.*, before, sooner than.
privātus, *a*, *um* (**privō**, deprive), private.
prō, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; *comp. prior*; *sup. prius*.
Proca, *ae*, *m.*, a king of Alba Longa.
prōcēdō, *ere*, **prōcessī**, **prōcessum** (**prō + cēdō**), *intr.*, go forward, proceed, advance.
procul, *adv.*, far off, from afar.
prōcūrō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātus** (**prō + cūrō**), *tr.*, take care of, attend to; avert.
prōditiō, **ōnis** (**prōdō**, betray), *f.*, treachery, treason.
proelium, *i*, *n.*, battle.
profectiō, **ōnis** (**proficiō**), *f.*, setting forth, departure.
proficiō, **proficiā**, **profectus sum** (**proficiō**, advance), *intr.*, set out, go, march.
profugiō, *ere*, **profūgī**, — (**prō + fugiō**), *intr.*, flee, escape.
progredior, **progredi**, **progressus sum** (**prō + gradior**, go), *intr.*, proceed, advance.
prohibeō, *ēre*, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** (**prō + habeō**), *tr.*, keep (away) from, prevent.

prōciō, *ere*, **prōciē**, **prōiectus** (**prō + iaciō**), *tr.*, throw forth, abandon.
prōmittō, *ere*, **prōmisi**, **prōmissus** (**prō + mittō**), *tr.*, promise.
prope, *adv.*, near, nearby; *comp. propius*; *sup. proximē*.
properō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātus**, *intr.*, hasten.
propinquitās, **ātis** (**propinquus**, near), *f.*, nearness, relationship.
propior, **propius** (**prope**), nearer.
propius (*comp. of prope*), *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, nearer.
prōpōnō, *ere*, **prōposuī**, **prōpositus** (**prō + pōnō**), *tr.*, set forth, declare, propose.
propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, **prōfuturus** (**prō + sum**), *intr. w. dat.*, be of service or use to, benefit.
prōtinus, *adv.*, ahead, directly.
prōturbō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātus** (**prō + turbō**, confuse), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge, repulse.
prōvincia, *ae*, *f.*, province.
prōvolō, *āre*, **āvī**, — (**prō + volō**), *intr.*, fly forth, rush out.
proximē (**proximus**), *adv.*, last, recently.
proximus, *a*, *um* (**prope**), nearest, next; in **proximō**, near by.
prūdēns, **prūdētis** (**prō + vidēns**), foreseeing, wise.
prūdenter (**prūdēns**), *adv.*, wisely.
pūblicus, *a*, *um* (**populus**), public; **rēs pūblica**, the state, republic.
Pūblius, *i*, *m.*, a Roman name.
pudor, **ōris**, *m.*, sense of shame, honor.
puella, *ae* (**puer**), *f.*, girl.
puer, **puerī**, *m.*, boy.
pugna, *ae*, *f.*, fight, battle.

pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum (**pugnus**, fist), *intr.*, fight; **pugnātum est**, they fought.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, pretty.

Pulcher, Pulchrī, m., P. Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.

pulchrē (**pulcher**), *adv.*, beautifully.

pullārius, ī (**pullus**), *m.*, keeper of the sacred chickens.

pullus, ī, m., chicken.

pulsus. See **pellō**.

Punicus, a, um, Punic, Phoenician, Carthaginian.

pūniō, ire, pūnīvī, pūnītus (**poena**), *tr.*, punish.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, (of the) Pyrenees.

Q

quadrāgintā, indecl., forty.

quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, to seek, ask. [possible.

quam, than; *with a sup.*, as possible, **quantus, a, um**, how great, as.

quārē (**quae + rēs**), *adv.*, for which reason, therefore.

quārtus (**quattuor**), *adj.*, fourth.

quasī (**quam + sī**), *adv.*, on the ground that, because.

quattuor, indecl., four.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, therefore.

quisquam. See **quisquam**.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, rel. pron., whoever, whatever.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam or **quiddam, indef. pron.**, certain, a certain one, somebody.

quidem, adv., indeed, truly.

quīn, conj., that not; that; from (*after verbs of hindering*).

quīndecim (**quīnque + decem**), *indecl.*, fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque, indecl., five.

Quīntus, ī (**quīntus**, fifth), *m.*, a Roman name.

Quirīnālis, is, m., Quirinal, one of the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, ī, n., the name given to Romulus after his deification.

quis, quae, quid and **quī, quae** or **qua, quod, interrog. and indef. pron.**, who, which, what; any, any one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or **quodquam, indef. pron.**, any, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque, indef. pron.**, each (one), every (one).

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or **quidvis** (**quī + vis, from volō**), *indef. pron.*, any one you please.

quō (**quī**), *adv.*, where, whither.

quod (**quī**), *conj.*, because.

quondam, adv., once, formerly.

quoniam, conj., since, because.

quoque, adv., also, likewise.

R

rapīō, ere, rapuī, raptus, tr., seize, steal. **ratīō, ōnis** (**reor, think**), *f.*, consideration, method.

ratis, is, f., raft.

Rauracī, ōrum, m., a Celtic tribe near the Rhine.

recidō, ere, recidī, — (**cadō**), *intr.*, fall back, fall, come back to.

- recipiō, ere, recēpi, receptus (capiō),** *tr.*, take back, receive; *sē recipere*, betake one's self, retreat.
- reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (dō),** *tr.*, give back, return, render.
- redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus, intr.,** go back, return.
- redintegro, āre, āvī, ātus (integer,** whole), *tr.*, restore, renew.
- reditiō, ōnis (redeō), f.,** return.
- redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus (dūco),** *tr.*, lead back.
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (ferō),** *tr.*, carry back; *pedem referre*, retreat.
- rēgina, ae (rēx), f.,** queen.
- rēgius, a, um (rēx),** kingly, royal; *aedēs rēgiae*, palace.
- rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum (rēgnum), intr.,** be king, reign. [kingdom.]
- rēgnum, ī (rēx), n.,** royal power.
- regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, tr.,** guide, rule.
- relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (lābor,** slip), *intr.*, sink back, subside.
- religiō, ōnis, f.,** piety; *pl.*, rites.
- relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus (linquō,** leave), *tr.*, leave behind, leave.
- reliquus, a, um,** remaining, left, the rest of; *nihil reliquī*, nothing left; *in reliquum tempus*, for the future.
- remaneō, ēre, remānsī, — (maneō),** *intr.*, remain, stay.
- remūneror, āri, ātus sum (mūnus),** *tr.*, repay, reward.
- Remus, ī, m.,** the brother of Romulus.
- Rēmus, ī, m.,** a Reman, one of the Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.
- renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntiō), tr.,** report.
- repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus (pellō),** *tr.*, drive back, repulse.
- repente, adv.,** suddenly, unexpectedly.
- reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus (pariō,** produce), *tr.*, find, discover, ascertain.
- reppulī. See repellō.**
- reprehendō, ere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus (prehendō, seize), tr.,** blame, censure.
- reprōmittō, ere, reprōmisi, reprōmissus (prōmittō), tr.,** promise in return.
- rēs, rei, f.,** thing, affair, circumstance; *rēs frumentāria*, provisions, supplies of grain; *rēs publica*, state, republic; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, therefore.
- rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus (scindō, break down), tr.,** break down, destroy.
- resistō, ere, resistī, — (sistō, place),** *intr., w. dat.*, oppose, resist, hold one's ground.
- respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōnsus (spondeō, promise), tr.,** reply, answer.
- restituō, ere, restitui, restitūtus (statuō), tr.,** renew, restore.
- retineō, ēre, retinui, retentus (teneō),** *tr.*, hold back, keep back, detain, retain.
- revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus (vertō), intr.,** turn back, return.
- reviviscō, ere, —, — (vivō), intr.,** be alive again.
- revocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vocō), tr.,** recall.
- rēx, rēgis, m.,** king.
- Rhēa, ae, f.,** Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
- Rhēnus, ī, m.,** the Rhine.
- Rhodanus, ī, m.,** the Rhone.

rigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, wet, moisten.
 rīpa, ae, *f.*, bank (of a river).
 rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, oak; strength.
 rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, ask, beg.
 Rōma, ae, *f.*, Rome.
 Rōmānus, a, um (Rōma), Roman;
 as subst. Rōmānus, ī, *m.*, a Roman.
 Rōmulus, ī, *m.*, the reputed founder
 of Rome.
 rosa, ae, *f.*, rose.
 rūmor, ōris, *m.*, rumor, report.
 rūsus (revertor), *adv.*, back, again.
 rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; rūri, in
 the country.

S

Sabinus, ī, *m.* 1. A Sabine. 2. *See*
 Titūrius.
 Sabis, is, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul,
 the modern Sambre.
 sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy, sacred;
 as subst. sacrum, ī, *n.*, a holy thing,
 religious rite.
 sacerdotēs, ōtis (sacer), *m. and f.*,
 priest, priestess.
 sacrificium, ī (sacer + faciō), *n.*,
 sacrifice.
 sacrum. *See* sacer.
 saepe, *adv.*, often; saepius, very
 often.
 saepēs, is, *f.*, hedge, fence.
 sagitta, ae, *f.*, arrow.
 sagittārius, ī (sagitta), *m.*, bowman.
 Saliī, ōrum (saliō, leap), *m.*, dancing
 priests of Mars.
 saltem, *adv.*, at least.
 saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), *m.*, jump;
 ravine.
 Santonēs, um, *m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe
 near the Garonne.
 sarcina, ae, *f.*, bundle, pack.

satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*, enough.
 saxum, ī, *n.*, rock, stone.
 Scaevola, ae (scaeva, left-handed),
 m., a surname of Gaius Mucius.
 scapha, ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.
 scientia, ae (sciō), *f.*, knowledge,
 skill.
 sciō, scīre, scīvī or scīi, scītus, *tr.*,
 know, know how.
 scriba, ae (scribō), *m.*, writer, scribe,
 secretary.
 scribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *tr.*, write.
 scūtum, ī, *n.*, shield.
 sē. *See* suī.
 sēcrētus, a, um (sēcernō, separate),
 concealed, hidden, secret. [along.
 secundum (secundus), *prep. w. acc.*,
 secundus, a, um (sequor), following,
 second; favorable.
 secūtus. *See* sequor.
 sed, *conj.*, but.
 sēdecim, *indecl.*, sixteen.
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit.
 sedīle, is (sedeō), *n.*, seat.
 sēgnis, e, slow, sluggish.
 Segusiāvī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe of
 Celtic Gaul.
 sella, ae (sedeō), *f.*, seat, chair; sella
 curūlis, a portable chair, opening
 like a camp-stool. Its use belonged
 at first only to the king, but later
 to curule aediles, praetors, consuls,
 dictators, and the Flamines.
 semper, *adv.*, always, ever.
 senātor, ōris (senex), *m.*, senator.
 senātus, ūs (senex), *m.*, senate.
 senectūs, ūtis (senex), *f.*, old age.
 senex, *gen. senis*, old, aged; *comp.*
 senior; *sup. maximus nātū*.
 Senonēs, um, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Celtic
 Gaul.

sententia, ae (**sentiō**, discern), *f.*,
opinion, decision.

sepiō, ire, **sepiō**, **sepultus**, *tr.*,
septem, *indecl.*, seven. [bury.

septimus, a, um (**septem**), *adj.*,
seventh.

septuāgintā, *indecl.*, seventy.

sepultus. See **sepiō**.

Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian; *as subst.*

Sēquanus, ī, *m.*, a Sequanian, one
of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
sequor, **sequi**, **secutus sum**, *tr.*, fol-
low.

servō, āre, āvi, ātus (**servus**), *tr.*,
keep, preserve, save.

servus, ī, *m.*, slave.

sēsē. See **suī**.

sex, *indecl.*, six.

sī, *conj.*, if; **sī minus**, if not.

sibi. See **suī**.

sic, *adv.*, thus, so.

siccus, a, um, dry; in **siccō**, on dry
ground.

significō, āre, āvi, ātus (**signum** +
faciō), *tr.*, signify, declare.

signum, ī, *n.*, sign, signal, standard,
ensign; **signa convertere**, face
about; **signa inferre**, charge.

silēns, **silentis** (**sileō**, be still), silent,
quiet.

silva, ae, *f.*, wood, forest.

silvestris, e (**silva**), wooded.

similis, e, like, similar.

simulō, āre, āvi, ātus (**similis**), *tr.*,
pretend.

sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.

singulī, ae, a, one by one, individual,
each.

sinister, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, left.

societās, ātis (**socius**), *f.*, alli-
ance.

sociō, āre, āvi, ātus (**socius**), *tr.*,
join, share.

socius, ī (**sequor**), *m.*, companion,
ally.

sōl, **sōlis**, *m.*, sun; **sōle ortō**, at sun-
rise.

soleō, ēre, **solitus sum**, *intr.*, be
accustomed.

sōlitūdō, inis (**sōlus**), *f.*, wilderness.

solitus. See **soleō**.

sollicitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, stir up,
arouse, provoke.

sōlus, a, um, only, alone, sole.

somnium, ī (**somnus**), *n.*, dream.

somnus, ī, *m.*, sleep.

soror, ōris, *f.*, sister.

spatium, ī, *n.*, space, distance, time,
opportunity.

spectāculum, ī (**spectō**, behold), *n.*,
sight, show, spectacle.

speculātor, ōris, *m.*, scout, spy.

spērō, āre, āvi, ātus (**spēs**), *tr.*, hope,
expect.

spēs, **spei**, *f.*, hope.

sponte (*abl.*), of one's own accord.

statim (**stō**), *adv.*, forthwith, im-
mediately.

statiō, ōnis (**stō**), *f.*, post, picket,
guard.

statua, ae (**statuō**), *f.*, image,
statue.

statuō, ere, **statuī**, **statūtus**, *tr.*, place,
decide, determine.

stella, ae, *f.*, star.

stipendium, ī (**stips**, gift + **pendō**,
pay), *n.*, pay, tribute.

strepitus, ūs, *m.*, noise.

studeō, ēre, **studuī**, —, *intr.*, be eager
for, desire.

studium, ī (**studeō**), *n.*, zeal, eager-
ness.

stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.

sub, prep. w. abl. and acc.: *w. abl.*, under, below, at the foot of; *w. acc.*, under, up to, to the foot of.

subdūcō, ere, subdūxī, subductus (sub + dūcō), *tr.*, bring up.

subitō (subitus, sudden), adv., sud-
sublātus. See tollō. [denly.

submittō, ere, submisī, submissus (sub + mitto), *tr.*, send, furnish.

subruō, ere, subruī, subrutus (sub + ruō, overthrow), *tr.*, dig under, undermine.

subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum (sub + sequor), *tr.*, follow, pursue.
subsidiū, ī (sub + sedēō), *n.*, aid, relief.

succēdō, ere, successī, successum (sub + cēdō), *tr. and intr.*, come up, approach. [proach.

successus, ūs (succēdō), *m.*, ap-
Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sufficiō, ere, suffēcī, suffectum (sub + faciō), *intr.*, be sufficient.

suī, pers. pron., of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; *dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē, sēsē; inter sē*, to one another.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, intr., be; *w. dat. of possession*, have.

summa, ae (summus), *f.*, the whole; leadership, supremacy.

summus. See superus.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, tr., take, assume, begin (battle).

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, upon, in addition to.

superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.

supericiō, ere, superiēcī, superiectus (super + iaciō), *tr.*, throw across.

superior. See superus.

superō, āre, āvī, ātus (superus), *tr.*, surpass, overcome, conquer.

supersedeō, ēre, supersēdī, supersesus (super + sedēō), *intr., w. dat.*, be superior, refrain from.

supersum, superesse, superfuī, super-
futūrus (super + sum), *intr., w. dat.*, be over, survive.

superus, a, um (super), above; *comp. superior, ius*, upper, former; *sup. suprēmus, summus*, highest, very great, top of.

superveniō, īre, supervēnī, superven-
tum (super + veniō), *intr.*, arrive.
supplicium, ī (supplex, suppliant), *n.*, punishment, death.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., above, before.

suprēmus. See superus.

suscipiō, ere, suscepī, susceptus (sub + capiō), *tr.*, undertake.

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus (sustineō), *tr.*, endure, withstand.

sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus (sub + teneō), *tr. and intr.*, hold up, withstand, sustain.

sustulī. See tollō.

suus, a, um (suī), his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; *suaque omnia*, all their possessions.

T

T. = Titus. [verbs].

tam, adv., so (*w. adjectives and ad-*
tamen, adv., however, yet, never-
theless.

tantus, a, um (tam), so great, such.

Tarpēia, ae, f., a Roman girl in the time of Romulus.

Tatius, i, m., Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.

tē, acc. of tū.

tēlum, i, n., missile, weapon.

temeritās, ātis, f., rashness.

tempestās, ātis (tempus), f., storm,

templum, i, n., temple. [tempest.

tempus, temporis, n., time, occasion.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus and tēnsus, tr., spread out, stretch.

teneō, ēre, tenuī, —, tr., hold. [delicate.

tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, young,

terra, ae, f., earth, land, country; **terrā,** by land.

terreō, ēre, terruī, territus, tr., frighten, terrify.

tertius, a, um (trēs), third.

testūdō, inis, f., tortoise; shed.

Teutonī, ōrum or Teutonēs, um, m. pl., Teutons, a Germanic people on the Baltic.

Tiberis, is, m., the Tiber.

tibi, dat. of tū.

tibicen, inis, m., piper, flute player.

timeō, ēre, timuī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of.

timidus, a, um (timeō), afraid, timid.

timor, ōris, m., fear.

Titūrius, i, m., Quintus Titūrius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, i, m., a Roman name.

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, tr., lift up, raise; remove, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, ium, m. pl., Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

tormentum, i (torqueō, twist), n., a military engine for hurling missiles.

Torquātus, i (torquis, necklace), m., a surname of Titus Manlius. See **Mānlius.**

tōtus, a, um, whole, all.

trādō, ere, trādidi, trāditus (trāns + dō), tr., give over, give up, deliver, surrender.

trādūcō, ere, trādūxi, trāductus (trāns + dūcō), tr., lead over, transport.

trāciō, ere, trāiēcī, trāiectus (trāns + iaciō), tr., throw or carry across, pass over, transfix.

Trallēs, Trallium, f., a town of Lydia.

trāns, prep. w. acc., across, over, through.

trānseō, īre, trānsiī, trānsitus (trāns + eō), tr. and intr., cross, go over, pass over, go across.

trānsfugiō, ere, trānsfūgi, — (trāns + fugiō), intr., flee over, go over.

trānsgridior, trānsgridī, trānsgressus sum (trāns + gradior, go), tr., go over, pass over.

trānsiliō, īre, trānsilui, — (trāns + saliō, leap), tr., leap over, jump across.

trānsversus, a, um (trānsvertō, turn across), transverse; **trānsversa fossa,** cross ditch.

trecentī, ae, a (trēs + centum), three hundred.

tredecim (trēs + decem), indecl., thirteen.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūnal, ālis (tribūnus), n., judgment seat, tribunal.

tribūnus, i (tribus, tribe), m., tribune, a military officer.

trīdium, i (trēs + diēs), n., interval of three days.

trīgintā, indecl., thirty.

triumphus, i, m., triumph.

tū, tuī, pers. pron., you, thou.

tuba, *ae, f.*, trumpet.

tuli. *See* ferō.

Tulingī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.

tum, *adv.*, then, in the next place.

tumultus, *i, m.*, uproar, disturbance.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

turba, *ae, f.*, throng, crowd.

turpis, *e*, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.

turris, *is, f.*, tower.

tūtēla, *ae* (tueor, protect), *m.*, guardian, protection.

tūtus, *a, um* (tueor, protect), safe.

tuus, *a, um* (tū), your, yours.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ūllus, *a, um*, any, any one.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; *sup.* ultimus, *a, um*.

ultrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, beyond, farther.

ūnā (ūnus), *adv.*, together with.

unde, *adv.*, whence.

ūndécim (ūnus + decem), *indecl.*, eleven.

undique, *adv.*, from or on all sides.

ūniversus, *a, um* (ūnus + vertō, turn), whole, entire.

ūnus, *a, um*, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ūsus, *a, um*. *See* ūtor.

ūsus, ūs (ūtor), *m.*, use, advantage, benefit, help; ūsuī esse, be of service.

ut, utī, (1) *adv.*, as when; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two), which one.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.

utī. *See* ut.

ūtī. *See* ūtor.

ūtilis, *e* (ūtor), useful.

utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may. [employ.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr., w. abl.*, use,

uxor, ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacuus, *a, um*, empty, destitute of, vacant.

vadum, *i, n.*, shoal, ford.

vāgītus, ūs (vāgiō, cry), *m.*, crying, squalling.

Valerius, *i, m.*, Mārcus Valerius Maximus Corvinus, consul 343 B.C.

validus, *a, um* (valeō, be strong), strong, sturdy.

vāllum, *i, n.*, wall, rampart, earthworks.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus (vāstus), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, *a, um*, vast, enormous.

vēlōcitās, ātis (vēlōx), *f.*, speed, swiftness.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, quick.

velut, velutī, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

venia, *ae, f.*, favor, permission.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come; in fidem venīre, put one's self under the protection of.

vēnor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, hunt, chase.

verbum, *i, n.*, word; verba facere, speak.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, fear, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, —, —, *intr.*, lie toward, incline.

veritus. *See* vereor.

vērō (vērus, true), *adv.*, in fact, indeed, however.

vertex, verticis (*vertō*, turn), *m.*,
summit, crest.

vĕrum (*vĕrus*, true), *adv.*, certainly,
but.

vĕscor, vĕsci, —, *def.*, *w. abl.*, eat.

Vesta, ae, f., goddess of the hearth,
and hence of the family and state.

Her sacred fire, kept continually
burning in her temple near the
Forum, was watched by six priest-
esses, called Vestals.

vester, vestra, vestrum (*vōs*), your,
yours.

vestis, is, f., garment, clothing.

vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, tr., forbid.

vetus, veteris, old, ancient; *comp.*
vetustior; *sup.* *veterrimus*.

vĕxillum, ī, n., a military ensign.

via, ae, f., way, road, street, jour-
ney.

vici. See *vincō*.

vīcīnus, a, um (*vīcus*), neighboring,
near.

victor, ōris (*vincō*), *m.*, conqueror,
victor.

victōria, ae (*victor*), *f.*, victory.

victus, victūrus. See *vīncō*.

vīcus, ī, m., village.

vidēlicet (*videō* + *licet*), *adv.*, of
course, that is.

videō, ēre, vidī, vīsus, tr., see; *pass.*,
seem, appear.

vigilia, ae, f., watching, watch (a
fourth part of the night).

vīgintī, indecl., twenty.

vīnciō, īre, vīnxi, vīctus, tr., bind.

vīncō, ere, vīci, victus, tr., conquer,
overcome.

vinculum, ī (*vīnciō*), *n.*, chain, fetter;
in *or ex vinculis*, in chains.

vindicō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., punish,
inflict punishment.

vīnea, ae, f., a military shed.

vīnum, ī, n., wine.

vīnxi. See *vīnciō*.

vir, viri, m., man.

vīrēs. See *vīs*.

virgō, virginis, f., virgin, maiden, girl.

Viromandui, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of
Belgic Gaul.

virtūs, virtūtis (*vir*), *f.*, manhood,
virtue, bravery, courage.

vīs, vim, f., power, force, number; *pl.*
vīrēs, strength.

vīta, ae, f., life.

vīvō, ere, vixi, —, *intr.*, live.

vix, adv., hardly, barely.

vixi. See *vīvō*.

vocō, āre, āvi, ātus (*vōx*), *tr.*, call,
summon.

Vocontii, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Gaul.

1. **volō, velle, voluī**, —, wish, desire,
be willing.

2. **volō, āre, āvi, āturus, intr.**, fly.

voluntārius, a, um (*voluntās*), will-
ing, voluntary.

voluntās, ātis (1. *volō*), *f.*, desire,
consent, favor.

vōs, pl. of tū.

voveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtus, tr., vow,
promise.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice; *pl.*, words.

vulgō (*vulgus*, multitude), *adv.*, gen-
erally, everywhere.

vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus (*vulnus*), *tr.*,
wound.

vulnus, vulneris, n., wound.

vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.

vultus, ūs, m., expression, looks,
countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH — LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

- able**, potēns, potentis; **be able**, possum, posse, potui.
- about to, be**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *fut. participle*.
- above**, superus.
- absent, be**, absum, āfui, āfutūrus.
- abundance**, cōpia, ae, f.
- accomplish**, cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī, cōfectus.
- account of, on**, *abl. of cause*; ob, propter, *w. acc.*
- across**, trāns, *w. acc.*; (**a bridge**) across the river, in flūmine.
- adjoining**, finitimus, a, um.
- administer**, administrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
- advance**, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum; prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum.
- advantage**, ūsus, ūs, *m.*
- advice**, cōsiliū, i, *n.*
- advise**, moneō, ēre, monui, monitus.
- affair**, rēs, rei, f.
- afraid, be**, timeō, ēre, timui, —.
- after**, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*; *conj.*, postquam.
- afterwards**, *adv.*, postea.
- against**, in, contrā, *w. acc.*; **be against**, obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus.
- agreeable**, grātus, a, um.
- aid**, auxilium, i, *n.* [*w. dat.*]
- aid**, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus.
- aim**, petō, ere, petivi or petii, petitus.
- alarm**, permoveō, ēre, permōvi, permōtus.
- all**, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.
- alliance**, amicitia, ae, f.
- allow**, patior, pati, passus sum; permittō, ere, permisi, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum.
- ally**, socius, i, *m.*
- alone**, sōlus, a, um.
- already**, iam.
- although**, cum, *w. subjv.*; *abl. abs.*, 315.
- always**, semper.
- am**, sum, esse; fui, futūrus.
- ambassador**, lēgātus, i, *m.*
- among**, inter, apud, *w. acc.*; **be among**, insum, inesse, infui, infutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfui, interfutūrus, *w. dat.*
- ample**, amplus, a, um.
- ancient**, vetus, veteris.
- and**, et, -que, atque; **and not**, neque.
- animal**, animal, animālis, *n.*
- announce**, nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus.
- another**, alius, a, ud; **to one another**, inter sē; **another's**, aliēnus, a, um.

- answer**, respondeō, ēre, respondi, respōsus.
- any, any one**, ūllus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod; quicumque, quicquam; quivis, quaevis, quodvis.
- appoint**, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.
- approach**, adventus, ūs, *m.*; aditus, ūs, *m.*
- approach**, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*; accēdō, ere, accessī, accessurus, *w. ad and acc.*
- Arlovistus**, Arlovistus, ī, *m.*
- arm**, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- arms**, arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*
- army**, exercitus, ūs, *m.*; **army on the march**, agmen, agminis, *n.*
- around**, circum, *w. acc.*
- arouse**, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus; permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
- arrange**, instruō, ere, instrūxī, instructus.
- arrival**, adventus, ūs, *m.*
- arrive**, perveniō, īre, pervenī, perventum.
- arrow**, sagitta, ae, *f.*
- art**, ars, artis, *f.*
- ascertain**, reperiō, īre, repperī, repperitus.
- ask**, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī, petitus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- assemble**, conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventus.
- at**, ad, *w. acc.*; *sign of abl. of time.*
- Athens**, Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.*
- attack**, impetus, ūs, *m.*
- attack**, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; lacessō, ere, lacessivī, lacessitus.
- attempt**, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.
- authority**, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; potestās, ātis, *f.*
- await**, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- away**, be, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfuturus.
- B**
- bad**, malus, a, um.
- baggage**, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. plur.*
- band**, manus, ūs, *f.*
- bank (of river)**, ripa, ae, *f.*
- barbarous**, barbarus, a, um.
- battle**, proelium, ī, *n.*; pugna, ae, *f.*; **line of battle**, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*
- be**, sum, esse, fuī, futurus.
- bear**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
- beautiful**, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
- beautifully**, pulchrē.
- because**, quod; *abl. of cause*; **because of**, propter, *w. acc.*
- before**, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*
- beg**, petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī, petitus; rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- begin**, coepī, coepisse, coepturus sum; **begin battle**, proelium committō, ere, commisi, commissus.
- behalf of**, in, prō, *w. abl.*
- behind**, post, *w. acc.*
- Belgae**, Belgae, ārum, *m.*
- believe**, existimō, āre, āvī, ātus; crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *w. dat.*
- below**, inferus, a, um.
- benefit**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfuturus, *w. dat.*
- benefit**, ūsus, ūs, *n.*
- besiege**, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus.
- best**, optimus, a, um; *adv.*, optimē.
- betake one's self**, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus (*refl.*).
- between**, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
bind, vinciō, īre, vīnxi, vinctus.
bird, avis, is, *f*.
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvi, ātus.
body, corpus, corporis, *n*.
book, liber, librī, *m*.
booty, praeda, ae, *f*.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom of, imus, a, um.
boundary, finēs, ium, *m. plur.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m*.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.
break up camp, castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō. ferre, tulī, lātus ; portō, āre, āvi, ātus ; bring in, inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus ; bring together, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m*.
build, aedificō, āre, āvi, ātus ; faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, ī, *n*.
burn, incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus.
but, sed, at ; autem (*postpositive*).
by, *sign of abl.* ; ā or ab, *w. abl.* ; by means of, *abl. of means* ; per, *w. acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m*.
call, vocō, āre, āvi, ātus ; appellō, āre, āvi, ātus ; call together, convocō, āre, āvi, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus ; expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
care, cūra, ae, *f*.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, diligentia, ae, *f*.
carry, portō, āre, āvi, ātus ; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; carry back, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus ; carry on, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, *f*.
case, causa, ae, *f*.
cause, causa, ae, *f*.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.* ; equitēs, um, *m. plur.* ; (of the) cavalry, equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, ae, *m*.
certain, a . . . one, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.
chain, vinculum, ī ; in chains, ex vinctis.
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m*.
change, convertō, ere, converti, conversus.
charge, signa inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus.
charge of, be in, praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *w. dat.* ; put in charge of, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. dat.*
chief, princeps, principis, *m*.
children, liberī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, rei, *f*.
citizen, cīvis, is, *m. and f*.
citizenship, civitās, ātis, *f*.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f*.
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n*.
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum ; come around, circumveniō, īre, circum-

vēnī, circumventus; **come** near, accēdō, ere, accessi, accessurus; **come together**, conveniō, ire, conveni, conventus; **come up**, perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perventus.

command, imperium, i, *n.*

command, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus; **imperō**, āre, āvī, ātum; **mandō**, āre, āvī, ātus; **praesum**, praesesse, praefui, praefuturus (*w. dat.*).

commander, dux, ducis, *m.*; **imperator**, ōris, *m.*

commit, committō, ere, commisi, commissus.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

companion, socius, i, *m.*

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgi, coactus.

complete, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.

concerning, dē, *w. abl.*

condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

confer, conloquor, conloqui, conlocutus sum.

confidence, fidēs, ei, *f.*

congratulate, grātulor, āri, ātus sum.

conquer, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; **vincō**, ere, vicī, victus.

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

conspirator, coniūrātus, i, *m.*

consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*

contend, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus; **dimicō**, āre, āvī, ātus.

contracted, angustus, a, um.

convert, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.

Corinth, Corinthus, i, *f.*

country, terra, ac, *f.*; patria, ac, *f.*; rūs, rūris, *n.*; **in the country**, rūri.

courage, animus, i, *m.*

cross, trānseō, ire, trānsī, trānsitus.

crowd, vulgus, i, *n.*; multitūdō, inis, *f.*

cry, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

cup, pōculum, i, *n.*

custom, cōnsuetūdō, inis, *f.*

cut down, occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

D

daily, cottidiānus, a, um; *adv.*, cottidiē.

danger, periculum, i, *n.*

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

daughter, filia, ac, *f.*

day, diēs, diēi, *m.*

daybreak, at, primā lūce.

daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

dear, cārus, a, um; **grātus**, a, um.

dearly, cārē.

death, mors, mortis, *f.*

deed, factum, i, *n.*

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat, calamitās, ātis, *f.*

defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēsus.

defense, praesidium, i, *n.*

delay, moror, āri, ātus sum.

delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

deliver (= set free), liberō, āre, āvī, ātus; (= hand over) trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus.

Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m.*

demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, petivī or peti, petitus.

depart, discēdō, ere, discessi, discessum.

dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

depth, altitūdō, inis, *f.*

desire, cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī, cupitus.

desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.

determine, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī, cōstitutus.

die, morior, mori, mortuus sum; **cadō**, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.

difficult, difficilis, *c.*
 diligence, diligentia, *ac, f.*
 direct, administrō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
 disaster, calamitās, *ātis, f.*
 discover, reperiō, *īre, repperi, re-*
disgraceful, turpis, c. [pertus.
 dismissa, dimittō, *ere, dimisi, dīmissus.*
 dispatch, praemittō, *ere, praemisī,*
praemissus.
 disposition, animus, *i, m.*
 dissimilar, dissimilis, *c.*
 ditch, fossa, *ac, f.*
 do, faciō, *ere, feci, factus; agō, ere,*
ēgi, āctus.
 document, litterae, *ārum, f. plur.*
 door, porta, *ac, f.*
 down from, dē, *w. abl.* [*w. dat.*
 draw near, appropinquō, *āre, āvi, ātum,*
 draw up, instruō, *ere, instruxi, in-*
structus.
 drive away, pellō, *ere, pepuli, pulsus.*
 during, inter, *w. acc.*

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid-
 que; each (of two), uterque, utra-
 que, utrumque.
 eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; eager for,
 cupidus, *a, um (w. gen.).*
 eagerly, ācriter; cum studiō.
 earthworks, vāllum, *i, n.*
 easily, facile.
 easy, facilis, *c.*
 eight, octō.
 employ, ūtor, ūtj, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
 encourage, hortor, *ārī, ātus sum;*
cohortor, āri, ātus sum; incitō,
āre, āvi, ātus.
 end, finis, *is, m.*
 enemy, hostis, *is, m. and f.*
 enjoy, fruor, frui, fructus sum, *w. abl.*

enough, satis, *indecl.*
 ensign, signum, *i, n.*
 entangle, impediō, *īre, impedivi, im-*
peditus.
 equal, pār, paris.
 equestrian, equester, equestris, eques-
 tre.
 equip, armō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
 establish, cōfirmō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
 Europe, Eurōpa, *ac, f.*
 even, *express by ipse, a, um.*
 ever, semper.
 every, omnis, *c.*
 evil, malus, *a, um.*
 exceedingly, *express by superlative.*
 except, nisi.
 exchange, inter sē dare.
 exhort, cohortor, *ārī, ātus sum.*
 expect, exspectō, *āre, āvi, ātus.*
 expel, pellō, *ere, pepuli, pulsus.*

F

face about, signa convertō, conver-
 tere, converti, conversus.
 facing, adversus, *a, um; prep., adver-*
sus, w. acc. [*w. dat.*
 fail, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus,
 faithful, fidus, *a, um.*
 fall, cadō, *ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.*
 falling, cāsus, *us, m.*
 famous, *express by ille, illa, illud.*
 far, far off, longē.
 farmer, agricola, *ac, m.*
 father, pater, patris, *m.*
 favor, grātia, *ac, f.*
 fear, timeō, *ēre, timui, —; vereor,*
ēri, veritus sum.
 fertile, ferāx, ferācis.
 few, pauci, *ac, a (plur.).*
 field, ager, agri, *m.*
 fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; asper, aspera,

asperum ; ferus, a, um.
fiercely, ācritēr.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum ; **fight a battle**, proelium facere.
fill up, complēō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.
finally, dēnique.
find, inveniō, īre, invēnī, inventus ;
 repērīō, īre, reppērī, repertus.
finish, cōficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
fire, ignis, is, *m.* ; **set fire to**, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.
first, primus, a, um ; **at first**, primō.
fit, idōneus, a, um.
five, quīque.
flank, latus, lateris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, ere, fugī, —.
flight, fuga, ae, *f.* ; **put to flight**, in fugam dare.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, a, um.
food, cibus, ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.* ; **at the foot of**, sub, *w. abl.* ; **to the foot of**, sub, *w. acc.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of dat.* ; ob, propter, *w. acc.* ; prō, *w. abl.*
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.
force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus.
forces, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; **in-**
struō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus.
former, ille, illa, illud.
fort, castellum, ī, *n.*
fortifications, moenia, ium, *n. plur.*
fortify, mūniō, īre, mūnīvī or mūnīi, [mūnītus.
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*
forty, quadrāgintā.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum.
free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
freedom, libertās, ātis, *f.*
frequently, saepe.
friend, amicus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amicitia, ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
from, *sign of abl.* ; ā or ab, ē or ex, dē, *w. abl.*
future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
gather, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, *f.* ;
 (inhabitant), Gallus, ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.* ; imperātor, ōris, *m.*
gentle, lēnis, e.
gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*
girl, puella, ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give back**, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ;
give up, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus ;
 permittō, ere, permisi, permissus ;
 trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, īi, itum ; proficiscor, ī, profectus sum ; **go across or over**, trāseō, īre, trānsīi, trānsitus ; **go back**, redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus ;
go forward, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum ; **go near**, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus ; **go out**, exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus ; **let go**, dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus ; **be going to**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437).

god, deus, *i, m.*
 goddess, dea, *ac, f.*
 good, bonus, *a, um.*
 graceful, gracilis, *e.*
 grain, frumentum, *i, n.*; supplies of
 grain, rēs frumentāria, rei frumen-
 tariae, *f.*
 great, magnus, *a, um*; great many,
 complūrēs, *ia, plur.*; so great,
 tantus, *a, um.*
 greatness, magnitūdō, *inis, f.*
 Greece, Graecia, *ac, f.*
 Greek, Graecus, *i, m.*
 ground, on the, humi.
 guard, praesidium, *i, n.*
 guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, cōsuētūdō, *inis, f.*
 hand, manus, *ūs, f.*
 Hannibal, Hannibal, *is, m.*
 happen, accidō, *ere, accidī, —.*
 harass, lacerō, *ere, lacerāvī, lacer-*
situs.
 harbor, portus, *ūs, m.*
 hard, difficilis, *e.*
 hardly, vix.
 harm, noceō, *ēre, nocuī, nocitū-*
rus, w. dat.
 hasten, mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum*; con-
 tendō, *ere, contendī, contentum.*
 haughty, superbus, *a, um.*
 have, habeo, *ēre, habuī, habitus*; *dat.*
of possession; have to, *passive peri-*
phrastic conjugation (438-9).
 he, is; hic; ille; he who, is quī.
 head, caput, capitis, *n.*; be at the
 head of, praesum, praesse, praefui,
 praefuturus, *w. dat.*
 hear, audiō, *ire, audiāvī, auditus.*
 height, altitūdō, *inis, f.*

help, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus,
w. dat.
 help, auxilium, *i, n.*; ūsus, *ūs, m.*
 Helvetians, Helvētīi, ōrum, *plur.*
 her, hers, eius; suus, *a, um*; her
 (own), suus, *a, um.*
 herself, *see self.*
 high, altus, *a, um.*
 hill, collis, *is, m.*; up the hill, ad-
 versō colle.
 himself, *see self.*
 hindrance, impedimentum, *i, n.*
 his, eius; huius; illius; suus, *a, um.*
 hither, hūc.
 hold, teneō, *ēre, tenuī, tentus*; hold
 back, retineō, *ēre, retinuī, retentus*;
 hold together, contineō, *ēre, con-*
tinuī, contentus; hold up, sustineō,
ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
 home, domus, *ūs or i, f.*; at home,
 domi.
 honor, pudor, ōris, *m.*
 hope, sperō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
 hope, spēs, spei, *f.*
 horn, cornū, *ūs, n.*
 horse, equus, *i, m.*
 horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
 hour, hōra, *ac, f.*
 house, domus, *ūs or i, f.*
 however, autem; tamen.
 hundred, centum.
 hurl, iaciō, *ere, iēcī, iactus*; coniciō,
ere, coniecī, coniectus.
 hurry, contendō, *ere, contendī, con-*
tentum; mātūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum.*

I

I, ego, mei.
 Ides, Idūs, Iduum, *f. plur.*
 if, si; if not, nisi.

impede, impediō, ire, impedivī, impeditus.

in, sign of abl. ; in, w. abl. ; be in, in-
sum, inesse, infui, infutūrus.

incite, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

increase, augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus.

industry, diligentia, ae, f.

infamous, turpis, e.

infantry, peditēs, um, m. plur.

influence, grātia, ae, f. ; auctōritās, ātis, f. ; have most influence, plūrimum posse.

influence, permovere, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.

inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fecī, factus.

inhabit, incolō, ere, incolui, —.

inhabitant, incola, ae, m.

injure, nocēō, ēre, nocui, nocitūrus, w. dat. ; obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus, w. dat. [esse, w. dat.]

intend, in animō habēre ; in animō into, in, w. acc.

intrust, committō, ere, commisi, commissus ; permittō, ere, permisi, permissus.

island, insula, ae, f.

it, is, ea, id.

Italy, Italia, ae, f.

its, eius ; suus, a, um.

J

January, Iānuārius, i, m.

javelin, pilum, i, n.

join, iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus ; join battle, proelium committō, ere, commisi, commissus.

joint, artus, ūs, m.

journey, iter, itineris, n.

judgment, iudicium, i, n.

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, servō, āre, āvī, ātus ; keep (away) from, prohibeō, ēre, prohibui, prohibitus.

kill, necō, āre, āvī, ātus ; interficiō, ere, interfeci, interfectus ; occidō, ere, occidi, occisus.

kindness, grātia, ae, f.

king, rēx, rēgis, m.

know, sciō, scire, scivi, scitus ; intelligō, ere, intellixi, intellectus ; perf. of cōgnoscō, ere, cōgnovi, cōgnitus.

L

Labiēnus, Labiēnus, i.

labor, labor, ōris, m. ; opus, operis, n.

lack, inopia, ae, f.

lack, careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, w. abl.

lacking, be, dēsum, deasse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, w. dat.

land, terra, ae, f. ; native land, patria, ae, f.

large, magnus, a, um ; amplus, a, um.

last, at, dēnique.

late at night, multā nocte ; till late at night, ad multam noctem.

latter, hic, haec, hoc.

law, lēx, lēgis, f.

lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus ; lead across or over, trādūcō, ere, trādūxi, trāductus ; lead back, redūcō, ere, redūxi, reductus ; lead out, ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxi, ēductus.

leader, dux, ducis, m. ; princeps, principis, m.

learn, intellegō, ere, intellixi, intellectus ; discō, ere, didici, — ; learn of, cōgnoscō, ere, cōgnovi, cōgnitus.

leave, *intrans.*, discēdō, ere, discessi, discessum; exeō, exire, exiī, exiturus.
trans., leave, leave behind, relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus.

left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.

left (= remaining), reliquus, a, um; nothing left, nihil reliquī.

legion, legiō, ōnis, *f.*

lest, nē, *w. subjv.*

let, *sign of imper. or subjv.*; let go, dimitto, ere, dimisi, dimissus.

letter (of alphabet), littera, ae, *f.*; (epistle), litterae, arum, *f. plur.*

liberate, liberō, āre, āvi, ātus.

liberty, libertās, ātis, *f.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, i, *m.*

life, vīta, ae, *f.*

lift up, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

like, similis, e.

like, amō, āre, āvi, ātus.

line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*

little, parvus, a, um.

live, vivō, ere, vixī, —.

long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.

lord, dominus, i, *m.*

love, amō, āre, āvi, ātus.

low, humilis, e.

loyal, fidus, a, um.

M

mad, insānus, a, um.

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

man, vir, viri, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.* and *f.*; a man who, is quī.

manage, administrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

manhood, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

many, plural of multus, a, um; very many, complūrēs, complūria.

march, iter, itineris, *n.*; on the march, ex itinere,

march, proficiō, ere, profeci, profectus sum; iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; contendō, ere, contendi, contentum.

Marcus, Mārcus, i, *m.*

master, magister, magistrī, *m.*; dominus, i, *m.*

may, *sign of wish*; utinam, *w. subjv.*

means of, by, *abl. of means*; per, *w. acc.*

mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Mercury, Mercurius, Mercuri, *m.*

messenger, nūntius, i, *m.*

middle of, medius, a, um.

mile, mille passūs; *plur.*, millia passuum.

mind, animus, i, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*;

have in mind, in animō habere; in animō esse, *w. dat.*; turn the mind to, animadvertō, ere, animadverti, animadversus.

mine, meus, a, um.

misfortune, cāsus, ūs, *m.*

money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, is, *m.*

moon, lūna, ae, *f.*

more, plūs, plūris; *sign of comparative.*

moreover, autem (*postpositive*).

most, *sign of superlative.*

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus.

much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multum, multō.

multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f.*

must, *passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent* (438-9).

my, meus, a, um.

myself, see self.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*

name, appellō, āre, āvi, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
 nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
 native land, patria, ae, *f.*
 near, ad, apud, *w. acc.*; come near, go
 near, accēdō, ere, accessi, acces-
 nearest, proximus, a, um. [sūrus.
 need, be in need of, careō, ēre, carui,
 caritūrus, *w. abl.*
 neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*
 neighboring, finitimus, a, um.
 neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.
 neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
 never, numquam.
 nevertheless, tamen.
 new, novus, a, um.
 next, proximus, a, um; posterus,
 a, um.
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*; late at night,
 multā nocte.
 nineteen, undēviginti.
 no, nōn; no one, none, nūllus, a, um;
 nēmō, *dat.* nēminī.
 nor, neque.
 north wind, aquilō, ōnis, *m.*
 not, nōn; and not, but not, neque;
 not to, nē, *w. subjv.*; if not, nisi;
 that not, nē, *w. subjv.*
 nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
 notice, animadvertō, ere, animadverti,
 animadversus.
 now, nunc, iam.
 number, numerus, ī, *m.*; multitudō,
 inis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. subjv.*
 obey, pāreō, ēre, pārui, —, *w. dat.*
 obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus.
 occupy, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 of, *sign of gen.*; dē, *w. abl.*
 often, saepe.
 old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.

older, maior nātū.
 on, in, *w. abl.*
 one, ūnus, a, um; one who, is qui;
 one . . . another, alius . . . alius; the
 one . . . the other, alter . . . alter; to
 one another, inter sē.
 only, sōlus, a, um.
 opportunity, spatium, ī, *n.*
 oppose, resistō, ere, restiti, —, *w. dat.*
 order to, in, ut, *w. subjv.*
 order, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus; imperō,
 āre, āvi, ātus; mandō, āre, āvi,
 ātus.
 Orgetorix, Orgetorix, Igis, *m.*
 other, alius, alia, aliud; (of two),
 alter, a, um.
 ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus;
 oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*;
passive periphrastic conjugation
 (438-9).
 our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum;
 our men, nostri, ōrum, *m. plur.*
 ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsi, ae, a.
 out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*
 over, in, *w. abl.*; trāns, *w. acc.*; be
 over, supersum, superesse, superfuī,
 superfutūrus, *w. dat.*
 overcome, superō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 overtake, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōn-
 secūtus sum.
 owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*
 part, pars, partis, *f.*
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
 pear tree, pirus, ī, *f.*
 people, populus, ī, *m.*
 perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxi, in-
 tellēctus.
 perish, cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.

permit, *permittō, ere, permisi, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum.*

persuade, *persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, w. dat.*

pitch (camp), *pōnō, ere, posui, positus.*

place, *locus, i, m.; plur., loci or loca; in that place, ibi; to this place, hūc.*

place, *pōnō, ere, posui, positus; conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus; cōstituō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitutus.*

plan, *cōsiliū, i, n.*

plead (a cause), *dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.*

please, *dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

pleasing, *grātus, a, um.*

pledge, *obses, obsidis, m. or f.*

plow, *arō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

point out, *dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

Pompey, *Pompēius, i, m.*

poor, *miser, misera, miserum.*

possess, *obtinēō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus.*

possession, take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvi, ātus; get possession of, potior, potiri, potitus sum, w. abl.*

possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, *quam, w. superl. of adj.; as soon as possible, quam primum.*

power, *potestās, ātis, f.; imperium, i, n.; vis, acc., vim.*

powerful, *potēns, potentis; be very powerful, plurimum posse.*

praise, *laudō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

prefer, *mālō, mälle, mālui, —.*

prepare, *parō, āre, āvi, ātus; compare, āre, āvi, ātus,*

present, be, *adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus; intersum, interesse, interfui, interfuturus.*

preserve, *servō, āre, āvi, ātus.*

pretty, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*

proceed, *cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecutus sum.*

promise, *polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sumi.*
proper, be, *oportet, ēre, oportuit, impers.*

protect, defend, *ere, dēfendī, dēfensus.*
protection, *praesidium, i, n.; fidēs, ei, f.; put one's self under the protection of, in fidem venīre, w. dat.*

proud, *superbus, a, um.*

provide, *parō, āre, āvi, ātus; compare, āre, āvi, ātus.*

province, *prōvincia, ac, f.*

provisions, *commēātus, ūs, m.; rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f.*

prudence, *cōsiliū, i, n.*

public, *pūbicus, a, um.*

punish, *pūniō, īre, pūnīvi, pūnītus.*

punishment, *poena, ac, f.*

pupil, *discipulus, i, m.*

purpose of, for the, *ad, w. acc. of gerundive.*

pursue, *cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecutus sum.*

put to flight, *in fugam dō.*

Q

queen, *rēgina, ac, f.*

quickly, *celeriter.*

quickness, *celeritās, ātis, f.*

R

race (= nation), *gēns, gentis, f.*

raise, *tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus,*

rampart, vāllum, *i*, *n*.
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m*.
ravage, vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus. [tum.
reach, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perven-
rear, novissimum agmen, *n*.
reason, causa, *ae*, *f*.
receive, accipiō, ere, accēpī, accep-
tus; recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus.
recognize, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī,
cōgnitus.
redoubt, castellum, *i*, *n*.
relief, subsidium, *i*, *n*.
remain, maneo, ēre, mānsī, māsum;
remaneo, ēre, remānsī, remānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, *a*, *um*.
remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondi, re-
spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus; ēnūntiō,
āre, āvi, ātus; renūntiō, āre, āvi,
ātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, *f*.
reputation, auctōritās, ātis, *f*.
request, petō, ere, petīvī or petiī,
petitus.
require, postulō, āre, āvi, ātus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat*.
respect, vereor, ērī, veritus sum.
respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.
rest of, reliquus, *a*, *um*.
restrain, contineō, ēre, continuī, con-
tentus.
retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinuī, obten-
tus; retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus.
retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus
(*refl.*); pedem referō, referre, ret-
tuli, relātus.
return, intr., redeō, redire, rediī,
reditūrus; revertor, reverti, re-
verti, reversus; trans. (= give

back), reddō, reddere, reddidī,
redditus.
reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus.
reward, praemium, *i*, *n*.
Rhine, Rhēnus, *i*, *m*.
Rhone, Rhodanus, *i*, *m*.
right, dexter, dext[er]a, dext[er]um.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n*.
road, via, *ae*, *f*.; iter, itineris, *n*.
rock, saxum, *i*, *n*.
Roman, Rōmānus, *a*, *um*; *as subst.*,
Rōmānus, *i*, *m*.
Rome, Rōma, *ae*, *f*.
rose, rosa, *ae*, *f*.
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
rouse, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus.
rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus; im-
perō, āre, āvi, ātum, *w. dat*.
run away, fugiō, ere, fugī, —.

S

safe, tūtus, *a*, *um*.
sailor, nauta, *ae*, *m*.
sake of, for the, causā, *w. gen.*; ut,
w. subjv.
sally, eruptiō, ōnis, *f*.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save (= preserve), servō, āre, āvi,
ātus; (= rescue), eripiō, ere, ēri-
puī, ēreptus. [*def.*]
say, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus; inquam,
scare, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
scout, explorātor, ōris, *m*.
sea, mare, *is*, *n*.
seat, sedile, *is*, *n*.
second, secundus, *a*, *um*; for the
second time, iterum.
see, videō, ēre, vidī, visus.
seek, petō, ere, petīvī or petiī, petitus;
quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus,

seize, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus ; capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.

select, dēligō, ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus.

self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, ipse, a, um (*intens.*) ; sui (*refl.*) ; **myself, yourself, ourselves**, ipse (*intens.*) ; *pers. pron.* (*refl.*).

senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*

send, mittō, ere, mīsi, missus ; **send ahead**, praemittō, ere, praemīsi, praemissus ; **send off**, dimittō, ere, dīmīsi, dimissus.

Sequani, Sēquani, ōrum, m. plur.

set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.

set over, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. acc. and dat.*

seven, septem.

seventy, septuāgintā.

severely, graviter.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

she, ea ; illa.

ship, nāvis, is, *f.*

short, brevis, *e.*

shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.

side, latus, lateris, *n.* ; **from or on all sides**, undique.

sight, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

sign, signum, i, *n.*

similar, similis, *e.*

six, sex.

size, magnitudō, inis, *f.*

skillful, peritus, a, um.

slaughter, caedēs, is, *f.*

slave, servus, i, *m.*

slay, occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

slender, gracilis, *e.*

slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.

small, parvus, a, um.

smooth, lēnis, *e.*

snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripi, ēreptus.

so, ita ; **tam** (*w. adjs. and advs.*) ;

so great, tantus, a, um ; **and so**,

itaque ; **so as not**, nē, *w. subjv.*

soldier, miles, militis, *m.*

sole, sōlus, a, um.

some (one), quis, quae (*qua*), quid (*quod*) ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (*aliquod*) ; **some . . . others**, alii . . . alii ; **some in one direction**, **some in another**, alii aliam in partem.

son, filius, fili *or* filii, *m.*

son-in-law, gener, generi, *m.*

soon, iam ; **mox** ; **as soon as**, quam primum.

space, spatium, i, *n.*

speak, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus ; **speak together**, conloquor, conloqui, conlocutus sum.

spear, hasta, ae, *f.*

speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*

spirit, animus, i, *m.*

spoil, praeda, ae, *f.*

stand before, praestō, praestāre, praestiti, —.

star, stella, ae, *f.*

state, civitās, ātis, *f.* ; **rēs publica**, rei publicae, *f.*

station, conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus ; **constituō**, ere, cōstitui, cōstitutus.

stay, maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsum.

storm, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus ; **take by storm**, expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus,

story, *fābula*, *ae, f.*
strange, *aliēnus*, *a, um.*
street, *via*, *ae, f.*
strength, *vīs, vim, f.*
strengthen, *alō, ere, aluī, alitus or altus.*
strive, *contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.*
strong, *validus*, *a, um.*
struggle, *contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.*
sturdy, *validus*, *a, um.*
such, *tālis*, *e*; *tantus*, *a, um.*
suffer, *patior, patī, passus sum*; *labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
suitable, *idōneus*, *a, um.*
summer, *aestās, ātis, f.*
summon, *convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
supplies, *commeātus, ūs, m.*; **supplies of grain**, *rēs frūmentāria, f.*
supply, *cōpia*, *ae, f.*
suppose, *existimō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.*
surpass, *tr.*, *superō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *intr.*, *praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.*
surrender, *dēditō, ōnis, f.*
surrender, *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus*; *dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus.*
surround, *circumveniō, ĩre, circumvenī, circumventus.*
survive, *supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus.*
sustain, *sustineō, ěre, sustinui, sustentus.*
swift, *vēlōx, vēlōcis.*
swiftly, *celeriter.*
sword, *gladius*, *ī, m.*

T

table, *mēnsa*, *ae, f.*
take, *capiō, ere, cēpī, captus*; **take**

away, *tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus*; **take by storm**, *expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus*; **take possession of**, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
teacher, *magister, magistri, m.*
tell, *dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.*
temple, *templum, ī, n.*; *aedēs, aedis, f.*
ten, *decem.*
tender, *tener, tenera, tenerum.*
territory, *finēs, finium, m. plur.*
than, *quam*; *abl. after comparative.*
that, *demonstr.*, *is, ea, id*; *ille, illa, illud*; *rel.*, *quī, quae, quod.*
that, in order that, so that, *ut, w. subjv.*; *after verbs of fearing, nē, w. subjv.*; **that not**, *nē, w. subjv.*; **would that**, *utinam.*
their (own), *theirs, suus, a, um*; *eōrum, eārum.*
themselves, *see self.*
then, *tum.*
thence, *inde.* [*lated.*]
there, *ibi*; *introductory, not trans-*
therefore, *itaque.*
thereupon, *inde.*
they, *īi, eae, ea*; *illi, illae, illa.*
thing, *rēs, rei, f.*
think, *existimō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.*
third, *tertius*, *a, um.*
thirty, *trīgintā.*
this, *hīc, haec, hoc.*
thou, *tū.*
thousand, *mille (indecl.)*; *plur.*, *millia or milia.*
three, *trēs, tria*; **three hundred**, *trecentī, ae, a.*
through, *per, w. acc.*
throw, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus*; *coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus.*

thus, ita.

Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, *i, n.*; for a long time, diū.

to, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; *sign of subjv. of purpose.*

to-day, hodiē.

top of, summus, a, um.

toward (s), ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, *f.*

town, oppidum, *i, n.*

trader, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*

transport, trāducō, ere, trādūxi, trāductus.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

trial, iūdicium, *i, n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

troops, cōpia, e, ārum, *f. pl.*

trust, fidēs, eī, *f.*

[*w. dat.*

trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum,

try, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

turn about, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus; turn back, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus; turn the mind to, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vigintī.

two, duo, duae, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, e.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —

upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*

urge, cohortor, āri, ātus sum; urge on, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; be of use to, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuturus, *w. dat.*

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

van, primum agmen, primū agminis, *n.*
vassal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

very, *adj. or adv. in superl.*; intens., ipse, a, um.

view, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

village, vicus, *i, m.*

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; wage war upon, bellum inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus, *w. dat.*

wait for, exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus.

wall, mūrus, *i, m.*

walls, moenia, moenium, *n. pl.*

war, bellum, *i, n.*

warn, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*

way, via, ae, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, *i, n.*; *plur.*, arma, ōrum, *n.*

wear out, cōficiō, ere, cōfēcī, cōnfectus.

well, bene; well known, nōbilis, e.

what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, ubi, cum.

where, ubi.

which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid;

which of two, uter, utra, utrum.

white, albus, a, um.

| | |
|--|--|
| who (<i>rel.</i>), qui, quae; (<i>interrog.</i>), quis, quae. | withstand , sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus. |
| whole , tōtus, a, um; omnis, e. | woman , fēmina, ae, <i>f.</i> ; mulier, mulieris, <i>f.</i> |
| why , cūr. | wood (= forest), silva, ae, <i>f.</i> |
| wicked , malus, a, um. | work , labor, ōris, <i>f.</i> ; opus, operis, <i>n.</i> |
| wide , lātus, a, um. | work , labōrō, āre, āvi, ātūrus. |
| width , lātitudō, inis, <i>f.</i> | would that , utinam, <i>w. subjv.</i> |
| wild , ferus, a, um. | wound , vulnus, vulneris, <i>n.</i> |
| will , volō, velle, voluī, —; will not , nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —. | wound , vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus. |
| willing , be, volō, velle, voluī, —; be more willing , mālō, mälle, mālui, —. | wretched , miser, misera, miserum. |
| wine , vinum, i, <i>n.</i> | write , scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus. |
| wing , cornū, ūs, <i>n.</i> | |
| winter , hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i> | Y |
| winter quarters , hiberna, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i> | year , annus, i, <i>m.</i> |
| wisely , prudenter. | yet , tamen. |
| wish , cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupitus; volō, velle, voluī, —. | you , tū, vōs. |
| with , <i>sign of abl.</i> ; cum, <i>w. abl.</i> ; apud, <i>w. acc.</i> [cessum. | young , iuvenis, is. |
| withdraw , discēdō, ere, discessī, dis- | your , yours, tuus, a, um; vester , vestra, vestrum. |
| within , <i>sign of abl. of time.</i> | yourself , tū, vōs; ipse. |
| without , sine, <i>w. abl.</i> ; be without , careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, <i>w. abl.</i> | Z |
| | zeal , studium, i, <i>n.</i> |

INDEX

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- Ablative, with *ab*, expressing agency, 142;
of cause, 118; of comparison, 260; of
manner, 148; of means or instrument,
94; of measure of difference, 267; of
separation, 211; of specification, 157;
of time, 131; descriptive, 302-303;
ablative absolute, 315-317; with *utor*,
fruer, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, 337.
- Accent, 20, 74, 1 and 2.
- Accusative, of time and space, 245; of
limit of motion, 236, 237; as subject of
infinitive, 184; 329.
- Adjectives, agreement, 65; demonstrative,
201; interrogative, 216, 217; possessive
292; as nouns, 203; with dative, 163.
- Adverbs, formation, 279; comparison,
280.
- Agency with the passive, expressed by
ablative with *ab*, 142.
- aliquis*, 301.
- Apposition, 58.
- bonus*, comparison, 272.
- Cause, ablative of, 118.
- Commands, 399.
- Comparison, Lessons 43, 44; ablative of,
260; irregular, 272; of adverbs, 280.
- Complementary infinitive, 184.
- Compound verbs, construction, 393-394.
- Concessive clauses, 386-387.
- Conditional sentences, 413-421.
- cum* clauses, 386-387.
- Dative of possession, 231; of service,
294-295; with adjectives, 163; with
verbs, 342-343; with compound verbs,
393-394.
- Demonstratives, 201-203.
- Deponent verbs, 333-335, 528; perfect
passive participle of, active in mean-
ing, 335.
- Descriptive ablative and genitive, 302-
303.
- domi*, 235.
- domus*, 222, 2; 501.
- eō*, 234; 525.
- Exceedingly, expressed by superlative,
268.
- Fearing, verbs of, 384, 385.
- ferō*, 527.
- fiō*, 526.
- fruer*, 337.
- fungor*, 337.
- Gender, rules of, 27, 28; 128; 223.
- Genitive, descriptive, 302-303; of the
whole (partitive), 251.
- Gerund and Gerundive, 403-406.
- hic*, 201.
- humi*, 235.
- idem*, 189.
- ille*, 202.
- Imperative, 398, 399.
- Impersonal use of verbs, 432.
- Indefinite pronouns, 300-301.
- Indirect discourse, 327-330; 369-370;
427-430.
- Indirect object, 58.
- Indirect question, 369-370.
- Infinitive, formation, 322; as subject,
183 *ō*; complementary, 184; tense of,
in indirect discourse, 330.
- Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216.

- ipse*, 207.
is, 188, 191.
iste, 208.
 Locative, 235.
mālo, 524.
 Measure of difference, ablative of, 267.
mille, 243, 3.
-ne, 40.
nōlo, 524.
 Numerals, 241-243.
 Order of words, 82.
 Participles, formation, 307; tenses, 309; use, 311; of deponents, 334; perfect passive participle, active in meaning, 335; as protasis, 311, 315, 316, 421.
 Partitive genitive, 251.
 Periphrastic conjugations, active, 437, 529; passive, 438, 439, 530.
 Personal pronouns, 284, 285.
 Place where, whither, whence, 237.
plūs, 273.
 Possession, dative of, 231.
 Possessive adjectives, 292-293.
possum, 274, 522.
potior, 337.
 Predicate agreement, 34, 184, 3.
 Pronouns, demonstrative, 201; indefinite, 300-301; interrogative, 216; personal, 284; reflexive, 286; relative, 195; agreement, 197; in indirect discourse, 428.
prōsum, 498.
 Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 350-351; 363-364; by gerund or gerundive, 406; by supine, 433-435.
 Quantity, 16-19.
 Questions, 40; indirect, 369-370.
qui, 195.
quidam, 301.
quis, 216; 301.
quisquam, 301.
quisque, 301.
 Rather, expressed by comparative, 268.
 Reflexive pronouns, 284, 286.
 Relative, 195; agreement, 197; relative clause of purpose, 363-364.
 Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356-358.
rūri, 235.
 Separation, ablative of, 211.
 Sequence of tenses, 371-374.
 Space, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245.
 Subject of infinitive, 184.
 Subjunctive, of purpose, 350-351; 363-364; of result, 356-358.
 Substantive clauses, 378, 380; with verbs of fearing, 384-385.
sum, 521.
 Supine, 433-435.
 Syllables, 10-15.
 Time, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245; clauses expressing time, 386-387.
 Too, expressed by comparative, 268.
ūtor, 337.
 Very, expressed by superlative, 268.
vēscor, 337.
 Vocative, 24.
volō, 524.
 Wishes, 423-425.

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

13 Apr '60 RT

REC'D LD

2 Feb '65 CB

APR 3 1960

REC'D LD

4 Aug '60 CT

JAN 28 '65 - 8 AM

IN STACKS

7 Oct '65 AA

REC'D LD

JUL 21 1960

SEP 24 '65 - 11 AM

REC'D LD

NOV 29 1965 6 9
REC'D LD

JUL 28 1960

JAN 23 '66 - 3 PM

26 Apr '61 GP

REC'D LD

OCT 12 1967 5 9

MAY 31 1961

RECEIVED

19 Feb '62 SL

OCT 11 '67 - 5 AM

REC'D LD

LOAN DEPT.

MAY 15 1962

LD 21A-50m 1.50
(A1724s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 45721

